



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NEDL TRANSFER



HN 24PK 5

KD 6.1694



HARVARD UNIVERSITY

LIBRARY OF THE

Department of Education

COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS

Contributed by the Publishers

✓

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN:

ADAPTED TO THE

LATIN GRAMMARS

OF

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH, ANDREWS AND STODDARD (PREBLE),
BENNETT, GILDERSLEEVE, AND HARKNESS,

AND PREPARED AS AN

INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE GALLIC WAR.

BY

ELISHA JONES, M. A.,

AUTHOR OF "EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION" AND
"EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION."

REVISED BY

JOSEPH H. DRAKE,

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

CHICAGO:

SCOTT, FORESMAN, AND COMPANY.

1899.

~~7113.5532~~

KD G1694

**Harvard University,
Dept. of Education Library**

**TRANSFERRED TO
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY**

**COPYRIGHT, 1877, 1895,
BY S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.**



P R E F A C E.

THESE LESSONS are intended as a practical drill-book for the beginner in Latin. They aim to make him familiar with the ordinary Latin inflections and the simpler principles of Latin syntax; to teach him as many words and expressions from Cæsar's commentaries as he can learn with profit, and thus prepare him for the successful study of that work.

References are made to seven of our best Latin grammars, with any one of which the book may be used. In the part devoted to inflection, the learner's attention is directed, as far as thought practicable, to the elements of words declined and conjugated, — to stems, endings, signs, and connecting vowels. The root and formation of stems are not referred to; these subjects belong more properly to a later stage of the study. In syntax, the principal rules only are introduced, and these are illustrated by numerous examples. Of the latter, translations are given which the learner may imitate in rendering the parallel exercises that follow; these exercises are taken chiefly from the Commentaries and accompanied by explanatory notes. English exercises to be turned into Latin are also added; these are so formed that the Latin sentences immediately preceding furnish models for their construction.

A few pages of fables and selections from early Roman history, together with the necessary annotations, follow the lessons. Complete vocabularies are added; in the Latin-English part, such derivations of Latin words as can be most readily understood are given, and also some English derivatives. Of these others will suggest themselves. With neither, however, should the mind of the beginner be much burdened. Their main use at this time is to aid him in fixing the meanings of words. *The chief work of the first year in Latin is to master the inflections and build up a vocabulary.*

The order of the grammars has not been followed. The verb is introduced early and made to alternate with the declensions, so as to give greater variety to the character of the sentences. No effort has been made to adapt the length of the lessons to the capacity of all classes; such an attempt would be futile. It will often be found necessary to devote two or more recitations to a single lesson. Some teachers may think it expedient to omit a few sentences from many of the exercises. To insure a good preparation for Cæsar, however, nothing should be omitted. It is believed that for classes in general the book contains matter sufficient for a year's labor.

The use of blackboards sufficiently extensive for an entire class cannot be too urgently recommended. The practice of requiring inflections and translations to be written *every day* upon the blackboard, and subjected to the criticism of the class, is most excellent. It not only adds great interest to the recitation, but also secures an accuracy and readiness which cannot be as easily attained, perhaps, by any other means.

The plan of the book was formed for the most part during a seven years' experience with beginners. It does not seem to me necessary to give a list of the introductory books, grammars, editions of Cæsar, and lexicons — American, English, and German — which have been consulted in its preparation. Some things which appear to be common property have been adopted without credit. I may here express my sincere thanks to kind friends for encouragement and practical suggestions; to the University Press of Cambridge for great patience and pains in securing typographical excellence; and especially to my publishers, Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co. of Chicago, for sparing no expense to produce a school-book unsurpassed in mechanical execution.

These Lessons are offered to the public with much hesitation, but with the hope that they may prove serviceable to some teachers and beginners.

ELISHA JONES.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, August, 1877.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

IN this revision the attempt has been made, not to revise out of the book the personality of its author, but simply to make the changes that would commend themselves to him, if he were now living. The teacher will note changes in the following particulars: 1. Vowels that are long by nature are marked with a macron. All unmarked vowels are to be considered short. 'Lewis's Elementary Latin Dictionary' has been followed, except in cases of obvious misprints. The orthography has also been made to conform to the usage of this dictionary. 2. Verb forms have been introduced earlier. This has necessitated some changes in the sentences of Lessons II.-VIII., and the rearrangement of Lessons XIX.-XXIV. 3. A few exercises based on a passage of continuous prose have been inserted after the 'Selections for Reading.' References are made to them in the several Lessons for which they may be substituted, if the teacher thinks best. 4. The grammar references have been changed to conform with the latest editions of the more widely used grammars. The plan of giving references to the grammars instead of incorporating grammar with the text has been retained, because of the almost unanimous preference for this

arrangement, expressed by the many prominent teachers consulted in regard to it.

It is hoped that the sterling honesty and thoroughness of the book, so characteristic of its author, have not been impaired by the changes made.

Thanks are due to Professor John C. Rolfe, of the University of Michigan, and Principal Judson G. Pattengill, of the Ann Arbor High School for useful hints; and, particularly, to Mr. Clarence L. Meader, of the University of Michigan, and Mr. Edward M. Traber, of the Hamilton, Ohio, High School for many valuable suggestions, and for assistance in reading the proofs.

JOSEPH H. DRAKE.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, July, 1895.

CONTENTS.

	Page
ABBREVIATIONS	xiv
INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS . . .	1
LESSON I.—NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION	5
LESSON II.—NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS . .	7
Declension of <i>dea</i> and <i>filia</i> .	
LESSON III.—NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION	9
Nouns in <i>-us</i> ; Gender.	
LESSON IV.—NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS .	10
Nouns in <i>-r</i> and <i>-um</i> .—Prepositions used with the Ablative.	
LESSON V.—NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS .	12
Genitive Singular of Nouns in <i>-ius</i> or <i>-ium</i> ; Vocative of <i>filius</i> and proper names in <i>-ius</i> ; Declension of <i>deus</i> .—Use of <i>in</i> and <i>sub</i> .	
LESSON VI.—ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS .	14
Declension and Agreement of Adjectives.	
LESSON VII.—ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	
(<i>continued</i>)	16
Genitive in <i>-ius</i> and Dative in <i>-i</i> .	
LESSON VIII.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.—APPOSITION . . .	17
LESSON IX.—VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS	19
LESSON X.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION	19
Personal Endings of the Active Voice; Present Stem; Present Indicative Active of <i>amō</i> .	
LESSON XI.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE	21
Subject Nominative.—Agreement of Verb.—Direct Object.	
LESSON XII.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION (<i>continued</i>) . . .	23
Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of <i>amō</i> .	
LESSON XIII.—MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE;	
DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS . . .	24

LESSON XIV.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION; PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES; THE PERFECT STEM	26
LESSON XV.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERATIVE MOOD; USE OF THE IMPERATIVE	28
LESSON XVI.—VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE	30
LESSON XVII.—USE OF THE INFINITIVE Infinitive as Object; Subject of the Infinitive.	31
LESSON XVIII.—GENERAL EXERCISE.—ABLATIVE OF MEANS	33
LESSON XIX.—CONJUGATION OF THE VERB SUM	34
LESSON XX.—THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS	35
LESSON XXI.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	36
LESSON XXII.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>) Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing.	37
LESSON XXIII.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	39
LESSON XXIV.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	40
LESSON XXV.—PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE	42
LESSON XXVI.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	43
LESSON XXVII.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.—DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS	45
LESSON XXVIII.—CONJUGATION OF POSSUM.—USE OF THE INFINITIVE Infinitive without Subject Accusative.	47
LESSON XXIX.—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMŌ	48
LESSON XXX.—REVIEW OF AMŌ.—TWO ACCUSATIVES	50
LESSON XXXI.—PASSIVE VOICE OF AMŌ Definitions and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.	52
LESSON XXXII.—PASSIVE VOICE OF AMŌ (<i>continued</i>)	53
LESSON XXXIII.—PASSIVE VOICE OF AMŌ (<i>continued</i>)	55
LESSON XXXIV.—SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF AMŌ	56
LESSON XXXV.—DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION	57
LESSON XXXVI.—ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES	59
LESSON XXXVII.—ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION	60
LESSON XXXVIII.—ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	62

LESSON XXXIX.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	63
Declension of Comparatives.	
LESSON XL.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>)	65
LESSON XLI.—DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	66
LESSON XLII.—ADVERBS	68
Definition; Derivation; Classification; Comparison; Syntax.	
LESSON XLIII.—VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE	70
LESSON XLIV.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES	71
Accusative of Time.	
LESSON XLV.—VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE	73
LESSON XLVI.—DEPONENT VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION .	74
LESSON XLVII.—FOURTH DECLENSION	76
Declension of <i>domus</i> .	
LESSON XLVIII.—FIFTH DECLENSION	77
LESSON XLIX.—VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE	78
LESSON L.—VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE .	80
LESSON LI.—VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES	82
LESSON LII.—THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN - <i>iō</i>	83
LESSON LIII.—DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJU- GATIONS	84
Ablative with certain Deponents.	
LESSON LIV.—GENERAL EXERCISE: PLACE	86
Place to which; Place at or in which; Place from which.	
LESSON LV.—NUMERALS.—EXTENT IN SPACE	88
LESSON LVI.—COMPOUND NOUNS.—ABLATIVE OF TIME . .	90
LESSON LVII.—PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND RE- FLEXIVE	91
LESSON LVIII.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>): DEMONSTRATIVE . .	93
LESSON LIX.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>): RELATIVE	94
Declension; Agreement.	
LESSON LX.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>): INTERROGATIVE AND IN- DEFINITE	96
Declension of <i>aliquis</i> .	
LESSON LXI.—CONJUNCTIONS	97
LESSON LXII.—CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES	99
LESSON LXIII.—PARTICIPLES	101
Definitions; Distinctions of Tense; Used for a Subordinate Clause.	

LESSON LXIV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	103
LESSON LXV.—IRREGULAR VERBS: FERŌ	105
LESSON LXVI.—COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ.—ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION	106
LESSON LXVII.—IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>): VOLŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS	107
LESSON LXVIII.—IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>): EŌ AND FIŌ	109
LESSON LXIX.—DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS	111
Infinitive as Subject.	
LESSON LXX.—THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.—DATIVE OF AGENT	113
LESSON LXXI.—USE OF THE DATIVE	115
Dative with Intransitive Verbs.	
LESSON LXXII.—USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE	117
Ablative with Comparatives.—Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command.	
LESSON LXXIII.—SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES	119
LESSON LXXIV.—USE OF THE DATIVE (<i>continued</i>)	121
Dative of the Person possessing; Two Datives.	
LESSON LXXV.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES	123
LESSON LXXVI.—USE OF THE GENITIVE	125
Genitive with Adjectives; Genitive in Predicate; Genitive with certain Verbs.	
LESSON LXXVII.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	127
LESSON LXXVIII.—USE OF THE ABLATIVE	129
Ablative expressing Measure of Difference; Ablative of Quality.	
LESSON LXXIX.—CONCESSIVE CLAUSES	131
LESSON LXXX.—USE OF THE ABLATIVE (<i>continued</i>)	133
Ablative of Price; Ablative of Distance; Ablative with Adjectives.	
LESSON LXXXI.—CAUSAL CLAUSES	135
LESSON LXXXII.—TEMPORAL CLAUSES	137
LESSON LXXXIII.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS	139
LESSON LXXXIV.—ORATIO OBLIQUA.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE	141
LESSON LXXXV.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>)	143
LESSON LXXXVI.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>)	145
LESSON LXXXVII.—THE GERUND	147
LESSON LXXXVIII.—THE GERUNDIVE	149

CONTENTS.

xiii

LESSON LXXXIX.—THE SUPINE 151

LESSON XC.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.—ABBREVIATIONS . . 152

LESSON XCI.—GENERAL EXERCISE 155

LESSON XCII.—GENERAL EXERCISE 157

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. FABLES 161

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY 165

III. THE LIFE OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR 171

NOTES 176

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH 183

II. ENGLISH-LATIN 229

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G., Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar, revised edition.	indef., indefinite.
A. & S., Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, revised edition.	interrog., interrogative.
abl., ablative.	lit., literal, literally.
acc., accusative.	LN., Lesson.
act., active.	m., masculine.
adj., adjective.	n., neuter.
B., Bennett's Latin Grammar.	num., numeral.
cf., <i>confer</i> , compare.	part., participle.
comp., comparative.	pass., passive.
conj., conjunction.	perf., perfect.
dat., dative.	pers., person.
dem., demonstrative.	pl., plural.
dep., deponent.	poss., possessive.
Ex., Example.	prep., preposition.
f., feminine.	pres., present.
fr., from.	pron., pronoun.
G., Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar, revised edition.	Ref., Reference.
gen., genitive.	rel., relative.
H., Harkness's Latin Grammar, re- vised edition.	sc., <i>scilicet</i> , understand.
ind., indicative.	sing., singular.
indecl., indeclinable.	subst., substantive.
	voc., vocative.
	Vy., Vocabulary.
	w., with.

N. B. — The different sections of this book are marked by italicized numerals. The numerals in the notes printed thus (4) refer to such sections.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

THE following numerals and letters refer to such portions of the grammar as are to be committed to memory. When two are joined by a dash the intermediate sections or paragraphs are also included : e. g. 2-4 or *a-c* signifies that the parts designated by 2, 3, and 4, or by *a*, *b*, and *c* are to be committed to memory. Only the coarse print is to be learned unless a special reference is made to the fine.

1. Alphabet. A. & G. *Alphabet* ; 1, *a* ; 2 ; 3 : A. & S. 3-7 ; 9-12 : B. 1 ; 2, 1 : G. 1 ; 2 ; 6 : H. 2-4, *w. fine print under 3 and 4.*

2. Pronunciation and Syllables. (*a*) *Roman Method.* A. & G. 14, *a-d* ; 16 : A. & S. 15-22 : B. 3 ; 4, 1-4 : G. 3 ; 4 ; 7 ; 8 ; 9 : H. 5-8.

(*b*) *English Method.* A. & G. 17, *a-c*, and NOTE : H. 9-14, *w. fine print.*

(*c*) *Continental Method.* H. 15.

3. Quantity. A. & G. 18, *a-f* ; 5, *fine print* : A. & S. 26-29 ; 37 NOTE 1 : 38-44 : B. 5, A, B : G. 2, 2 ; 10-13, REMARK : H. 16, I-III., and NOTES 2-4.

4. Accent. A. & G. 19, *a-c*, *w. Def.* : A. & S. 25 NOTE 1 ; 30-35 : B. 6, 1-3 : G. 15, 1, 2 : H. 17 ; 18.

5. Parts of Speech and Inflection. A. & G. 20 ; 21 ; 25, *a-i* ; 26 ; 27 : A. & S. 54 ; 55 ; 73 ; 74 : B. 10 ; 11 : G. 16 ; 17, *the whole* : H. 37-40.

6. Gender. A. & G. 28, *a, b* ; 29 ; 30 : A. & S. 78-83 : B. 13-15 : G. 19 ; 20, I-III. ; 21, 1-3 : H. 41 ; 42, I., II.

7. Person, Number, and Case. A. & G. 31, *a-g*, NOTE, *h*: A. & S. 85-88, *a*: B. 16; 17, 1-3: G. 22-25: H. 44; 45, *w. fine print*.

8. Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*: A. & S. 89; 90, *b*: B. 18; 19: G. 26; 27, *the whole*: H. 46, *w. fine print*; 47, *w. NOTE 3*.

Note.

The division of the above introductory matter into suitable lessons is left to the teacher. He will find it necessary at first to go over each lesson in advance with the class and point out the portions designated. The following suggestion is offered. Each definition should be made practical by application. E. g., as soon as the learner has committed to memory the portions of grammar referred to under "**1. Alphabet**," he should turn to the subjoined "**EXERCISE**" and classify the letters of the Latin words there found. After learning "**2**," he should pronounce the same letters in accordance with the rules under "**2**," and divide the words which they form into syllables. *Learn thoroughly; review often; use the blackboard.*

EXERCISE.

HOW THE ANCIENT BRITONS FOUGHT.

Primō per omnēs partēs perequitant,¹ et tēla
 First through all parts they ride and javelins
 coniciunt, atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū
 they hurl, and by the very fright of the horses and rattling
 rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant;¹ et
 of the wheels the ranks very often they throw into confusion; and
²cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt,
 when themselves among of the horsemen the squadrons they have worked
 runt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt,¹ et pedibus proeli-
 in, from [their] war chariots they leap down, and on foot they
 antur.¹ Aurigae interim paulatim ex proeliō
 fight. The charioteers in the meantime gradually from the battle
 excēdunt,¹ atque ita currūs conlocant,¹ ut sī illi ā
 withdraw, and so [their] chariots place, that if they by

multitūdine hostium premantur,¹expeditum ad suōs
 a great number of enemies are hard pressed, [an] easy to their own [men]
 receptum² habeant.¹ Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabili-
 retreat they may have. So the activity of horsemen, the firm-
 tātem peditum in proeliīs praestant.¹
 ness of foot soldiers in battles they evince.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Notice that the verb regularly comes last in a Latin clause or sentence.

² Observe the peculiarity of the order of the Latin. Change the English translation of *cum . . . insinuāvērunt* so as to read, *when they have worked themselves in among the squadrons of horsemen.*

³ What is the quantity of the penult of *receptum*? Why? (3) Which syllable is accented? Why? (4) *Numerals printed thus (4) refer to sections of this book.*

N. B. In this book all long vowels are marked with a macron (-). Give every unmarked vowel its short sound, even if the *syllable* in which it stands is long because of the position of the vowel. See A. & G. 18, d: A. & S. 28: B. 5, B, c): G. 12, 2: H. 16, I., 2, NOTE 2

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

LESSON I.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.

9. Learn the *declension* of the model noun, the *stem* and *case-endings*, the *meaning* of each case, and the *rule of gender* for nouns of the First Declension. A. & G. NOTE, 35; 36, c: A. & S. 91-93: B. 20; 21, 1, 2, c: G. 26; 29, REMARK 2; 30: H. 46, 1; 48, 1, 2, 4.

10. The learner should make the words of the Vocabularies so familiar that when the Latin is pronounced, he can give promptly the English equivalent, or when the English is pronounced, he can give promptly the Latin equivalent.⁴ Not only the Nominative, but also the *Genitive* and *Gender* of each Latin noun should always be learned.

VOCABULARY.

causa, -ae, ¹ f. ²	cause, reason.
Genāva, -ae, f.	Geneva. ³
glōria, -ae, f.	glory, honor.
lingua, -ae, f.	tongue, language.
memoria, -ae, f.	memory.
rīpa, -ae, f.	bank (of a stream).
via, -ae, f.	way, road.

¹ *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive. To form the Genitive of *causa*, substitute *ae* for final *a*: e. g. Nom. *causa*, Gen. *causae*.

² In the Vocabularies, *f.* stands for *feminine gender*, *m.* for *masculine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

³ For a fuller description of Proper Names given in the special Vocabularies, see Vocabulary at end of the book.

⁴ Careful attention should be given to the pronunciation of each syllable; the rules for *quantity* and *accent* will need to be called to mind very often. Remember that *the final syllable of a Latin word is never accented*.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe¹ each word.

1. Causa.² 2. Glōriārum.³ 3. Rīpae. 4. Linguā.⁴
5. Memoriā.⁵ 6. Linguās. 7. Viā. 8. Rīpās. 9. Memoriae.
10. Glōriae. 11. Causās. 12. Viam. 13. Memoriaris.
14. Via. 15. Glōriam. 16. Linguārum. 17. Causis.
18. Rīpā. 19. Genāvae.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Of a² cause. 2. Of the causes. 3. With glory.
4. For glory. 5. With tongues. 6. In the language.
7. O Memory! 8. In memory. 9. Of the banks.
10. By the way.

N. B. In writing Latin, *every long vowel should be marked with a macron (-)*.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To describe a noun is to tell its case, number, and gender, its stem and case-ending (termination).

² The Latin language has no article. In translating Latin nouns into English, *a*, *an* or *the* may be supplied according to the sense. E. g. *causa* may be rendered *a cause*, *the cause*, or simply *cause*.

³ Which syllable of *glōriārum* is accented? Why? (4)

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *linguā*? Why? (3)

⁵ The Ablative may often be rendered by the preposition *in* and the noun: e. g. *memoriā*, *in memory*; *linguā*, *in the language*.

⁶ Locative Case; translate by the preposition *at* or *in* and the noun, e. g. *Rōmae*, *at Rome*, or *in Rome*.

LESSON II.

NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

11. Declension of *dea* and *filia*. A. & G. 36, *e* : A. & S. 93, *e* : B. 21, 2, *e* ; G. 29, REMARK 4 ; 30 : H. 49, 4.

12. Use of Prepositions. A. & G. 260 : A. & S. 428 : B. 141 ; 142 : G. 416 ; 418 : H. 432.

EXAMPLES.¹

1. *Iūlia* (subject) *amat* (predicate), *Julia loves*.
2. *Iūlia* *deam* (direct object) *amat*, *Julia loves the goddess*.
3. *Iūlia est* (copula) *bona* (predicate adjective), *Julia is good*.

¹ N. B. The EXAMPLES should always be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ad</i> , prep. w. acc. ¹	<i>to</i> .
<i>amat</i> , verb,	<i>(he, she, it) loves</i> .
<i>bona</i> , adj. f.	<i>good</i> .
<i>dat</i> , verb,	<i>(he, she, it) gives</i> .
<i>dea</i> , -ae, f.	<i>goddess</i> .
<i>est</i> , verb,	<i>(he, she, it) is</i> .
<i>filia</i> , -ae, f.	<i>daughter</i> .
<i>Iūlia</i> , -ae, f.	<i>Julia</i> .
<i>lāta</i> , adj. f.	<i>broad, wide</i> .
<i>māgna</i> , adj. f.	<i>large, big, great</i> .
<i>Mātrona</i> , -ae, m.	<i>the Marne</i> .
<i>per</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>through</i> .
<i>properat</i> , verb,	<i>(he, she, it) hastens</i> .
<i>prōvincia</i> , -ae, f.	<i>province</i> .
<i>silva</i> , -ae, f.	<i>forest</i> .
<i>sunt</i> , verb,	<i>(they) are</i> .
<i>trāns</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>across</i> .
<i>ubi</i> , adv.	<i>where</i> .

¹ "prep. w. acc." signifies that *ad* is a preposition used with the Accusative.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Ad ripam¹ properat. 2. Deam amat.² 3. Ad ripam Mātrona³ properat.⁴ 4. Trāns Mātronam properat. 5. Dea⁵ est bona.⁶ 6. Deae sunt bonae.⁶ 7. Filiae deārum sunt bonae. 8. Via per silvam est lāta. 9. Fīlia Iūliae in silvā⁷ est. 10. Prōvincia est māgna. 11. Genāva in prōvinciā est. 12. Deae in silvis sunt. 13. Iūlia filiābus⁸ prōvinciam⁹ dat. 14. Ubi est dea? Dea in silvā est.

Write in Latin.¹¹

1. She loves² Julia. 2. Julia hastens to¹⁰ the Marne. 3. Julia hastens through the province. 4. The goddess is good. 5. The goddess loves Julia. 6. The memory of the goddess is good. 7. The goddess is in the forest. 8. Julia gives a daughter to the goddesses. 9. Where is Julia? Julia is in the province.

Notes and Questions.

¹ When a noun is used with a preposition, give the rule referred to under 12.

² The subject of the verb *amat* seems to be omitted but is really expressed in the Personal Ending *t*. Translate *amat* by *he*, or *she*, or *it loves*.

³ Give the rule for the gender of *Mātronae* (6).

⁴ The verb usually comes last in a Latin sentence, except *est* and *sunt* and other forms of the same verb used as a copula, which may be placed either between the subject and predicate or at the end of the sentence.

⁵ See LN. I., NOTE 2.

⁶ In Latin as in English a predicate adjective agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case. Note that the adjective has the same ending as the noun.

⁷ See LN. V., 19 and VY. Which cases of the First Declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? What is the difference between *silvā* and *silvā*? The place *where* is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *in*.

⁸ Indirect object of the verb.

¹⁰ Translate by the proper preposition.

⁹ Direct object of the verb.

¹¹ See LN. I., N. B.

LESSON III.

NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION.

13. Nouns in -us. A. & G. 38, servus; 40, a: A. & S. 95, dominus; 97 (3): B. 23, hortus; 25, 5: G. 31; 33, hortus, REMARK 3: H. 51, servus, 1, 2, 1)-3), 8.

14. Gender. A. & G. 39: A. & S. 95: B. 23: G. 34: H. 51.

VOCABULARY.

ante, prep. w. acc.	before.
amicitia, -ae, f.	friendship.
amicus, -i, m.	friend.
bonus, ¹ adj., m.	good.
carrus, -i, m.	cart, wagon.
contrā, prep. w. acc.	against.
Germānī, -ōrum, m.	the Germans.
lātus, ¹ adj., m.	broad, wide.
lēgātus, -i, m.	legate, lieutenant.
māgnus, ¹ adj., m.	large, big, great.
numerus, -i, m.	number.
oculus, -i, m.	eye.
populus, -i, m.	people.
pūgnat, verb.	(he, she, it) fights.
Rhēnus, -i, m.	the Rhine.
Rhodanus, -i, m.	the Rhone.

¹ bonus, lātus, and māgnus are masculine forms of the adjectives of which bona, lāta, and māgna are feminine forms.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Populī.¹ 2. Popule. 3. Populīs. 4. Amicitia populī. 5. Fīlia lēgātī.² 6. Populī³ amīcīs. 7. Lēgātus ante oculōs populī pūgnat. 8. Rhēnus est lātus.⁴ 9. Rhodanus est māgnus.⁴ 10. Germānī sunt bonī.⁴ 11. Dea contrā Germānōs pūgnat. 12. Lēgātus est

amicus^b *populi*.² 13. *Lēgātus* *trāns* *Rhodanum* *properat*. 14. *Ubi sunt silvae?* *Silvae in prōvinciā sunt*.

Write in Latin.^c

1. Of a friend. 2. To a friend. 3. O friend. 4. Against a friend. 5. Of friends. 6. The friends of the Germans. 7. The wagon is large.⁴ 8. The Rhone is wide.⁴ 9. The legate fights against the friends of the Germans. 10. He fights against the Germans. 11. The friend of the people loves the Germans. 12. The people are good.⁴ 13. Where are the Germans? The Germans are in the forest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the stem of *populi*? What are the case-endings of the Second Declension? Which cases are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Which cases are like the same cases of the First Declension? What is the rule of gender for the Second Declension? (14) What is the rule of gender for the First Declension? What are the general rules for gender? (6)

² The Latin Genitive is often equivalent to the English possessive case: *filia lēgātī* is best rendered *the lieutenant's daughter*.

³ The Genitive usually stands after the noun which it limits, but often before it. In the latter case the Genitive is made emphatic: e. g., *filia amici*, *the friend's daughter*; but *amicus filia*, *the friend's daughter*.

⁴ See LN. II., NOTE 6.

⁵ A predicate noun agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

⁶ See LN. I., N. B.

LESSON IV.

NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

15. Nouns in -r and -um. A. & G. 38 : A. & S. 95 : B. 23 : G. 31 ; 33 : H. 51, 2, 3)-6), 4, 1).

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative. A. & G. 152, b : A. & S. 430 : B. 142 : G. 417 : H. 434.

N. B. The list of prepositions used with the Ablative should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, ¹ prep. w. abl.	<i>from, by.</i>
ager, agrī, m.	<i>field, territory.</i>
amant, verb,	<i>(they) love.</i>
bellum, -ī, n.	<i>war.</i>
cum, prep. w. abl.	<i>with.</i>
dant, verb,	<i>(they) give.</i>
dē, prep. w. abl.	<i>down from, concerning, for.</i>
ē, ex, ¹ prep. w. abl.	<i>out of.</i>
frūmentum, -ī, n.	<i>grain.</i>
gener, generī, m.	<i>son-in-law.</i>
Helvētīī, -ōrum, m.	<i>the Helvetii.</i>
properant, verb,	<i>(they) hasten.</i>
puer, puerī, m.	<i>boy.</i>
pūgnant, verb,	<i>(they) fight.</i>
rēgnum, -ī, n.	<i>sovereignty, kingdom.</i>
sine, prep. w. abl.	<i>without.</i>
templum, -ī, n.	<i>temple.</i>
vir, virī, m.	<i>man.</i>

¹ **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **ab** and **ex** before either a vowel or consonant.

Pronounce; translate; parse¹ the nouns used with prepositions.

1. Puerī,² puerōrum. 2. Generō, generīs. 3. Agrī Helvētīōrum. 4. Cum virīs pūgnant. 5. Germānī Rhēnum amant.³ 6. Dē rēgnō pūgnant. 7. Helvētīī sine causā pūgnant. 8. Puerī ex templō properant. 9. Bellum cum Germānīs. 10. Agrī sunt māgnī.⁴ 11. Virī Helvētīīs⁵ frūmentum⁶ dant. 12. Ā silvā properat.

Write in Latin.

1. Before the war with the Germans. 2. The grair is in⁷ the field. 3. They hasten out of the temple. 4. The Germans fight without cause. 5. The man's⁸ daughters are in⁷ the province. 6. The Germans fight with the Helvetii. 7. He fights for sovereignty. 8. The boys are in⁷ the forest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing a noun.* — *cum viris*: *viris* is a masculine noun of the Second Declension; stem, *viro*; declined, singular, *vir, viri, virō, virum, vir, virō*; plural, *virī, virōrum, viris, virōs, viri, viris*; it is in the Ablative plural and used with the preposition *cum*; rule (16). Repeat the rule giving the list of prepositions used with the Ablative.

² Which endings do nouns in *r* drop? *ANS.* The Nominative *us* and the Vocative *e*. To which declension does *puerī* belong? Why? *prōvincia*? Why? How many declensions are there and how distinguished from one another? (*s*)

³ The elements of a verb in the Present Tense are *stem* and *personal ending*: e. g., ^{love they} *ama nt* has the stem *ama*, *love*; and the Personal ending *nt, they*.

⁴ See LN. II., NOTE 6.

⁵ Indirect object of the verb.

⁷ See LN. II., NOTE 7.

⁶ Direct object of the verb.

⁸ See LN. III., NOTE 2.

 LESSON V.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

17. Nouns in *-ius* or *-ium* generally form the Genitive Singular with one *i*, while the position of the accent remains unchanged: *Cassī, of Cassius*; *filli, of the son*; *cōnsillī, of counsel*.

18. *Vocative of filius and proper names in -ius.* A. & G. 40, c: A. & S. 97 (5): B. 25, 1: G. 33, 2: H. 51, 5.

19. *Use of in and sub.* A. & G. 152, c: A. & S. 431: B. 143: G. 418: H. 435, I.

20. *deus* — stem *DEO* — is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>deus,</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī.</i>
Gen. <i>deī,</i>	<i>deōrum, defūm.</i>
Dat. <i>deō,</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dis.</i>
Acc. <i>deum,</i>	<i>deōs.</i>
Voc. <i>deus,</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī.</i>
Abl. <i>deō,</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dis.</i>

VOCABULARY.

amō , verb,	(I) love.
Cassius , -ī, m.	Cassius.
castrum , -ī, n.	fort ; pl. camp.
concilium , -ī, n.	council, assembly.
cōnsilium , -ī, n.	counsel, plan.
deus , -ī (see 20),	god.
dō , verb,	(I) give.
equus , -ī, m.	horse.
et , conj.	and.
filius , -ī, m.	son.
in , prep. w. acc. or abl.	into, in.
iugum , -ī, n.	yoke.
Lūcius , -ī, m.	Lucius.
oppidum , -ī, n.	town.
portō , verb,	(I) carry, ¹ bear.
pūgnō , verb,	(I) fight.
sub , prep. w. acc. or abl.	under.
sum , verb,	(I) am.

¹ What is the translation of (he) carries?

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns used with prepositions.

1. Deōs et¹ deās amō. 2. Cassiō equum dō. 3. Cum Lūciō pūgnō. 4. In² conciliō sum. 5. Puer est in² oppidō. 6. In² castra³ frūmentum portō. 7. Frūmentum est sub⁴ castrō. 8. Sub⁴ castrum frūmentum portō. 9. Filiō Lūci⁵ iugum dō. 10. Ubi est equus? Equus in agrō est. 11. Cōnsilium lēgātī est bonum.⁶ 12. Ō fili Lūci Cassī.

Write in Latin.

1. I love the gods. 2. He hastens into the town. 3. I am in the camp. 4. The horse is under the yoke. 5. Where is Lucius? Lucius is in the town. 6. I fight with the Germans. 7. Julia's⁷ plan is good.⁶

Notes and Questions.

¹ *et* is a conjunction; conjunctions connect words and clauses in Latin as in English. *et* connects similar constructions.

² Observe carefully the difference in meaning in used with the Accusative and in used with the Ablative.

³ Observe that *castrum* means in the Singular *a fort*, but in the Plural *a camp* (military camp); a Roman camp was surrounded by a rampart and a trench.

⁴ Observe that the Accusative is used with *sub*, when the verb on which it depends expresses *motion toward a place*; the ablative, when the verb denotes *rest in a place*.

⁵ See 17.

⁶ *bonum* adj. n. *good*. Compare LN. II., NOTE 6.

⁷ See LN. III., NOTE 2.



LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

21. Learn the declension of bonus (cārus). A. & G. 81: A. & S. 143: B. 63: G. 73: H. 146-148.

22. Agreement of Adjectives. A. & G. 186: A. & S. 332: B. 234: G. 289: H. 438.

VOCABULARY.

<i>bonus</i> , -a, ¹ -um, ¹	<i>good</i> .
<i>cārus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>dear, beloved</i> .
<i>exemplum</i> , -i, n.	<i>example</i> .
<i>fugit</i> , verb,	<i>(he, she, it) flees, escapes</i> .
<i>lacrima</i> , -ae, f.	<i>tear</i> .
<i>māgnus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>great, big, large</i> .
<i>malus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>bad</i> .
<i>multus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>much; pl. many</i> .
<i>-ne</i> , ²	<i>an interrogative particle</i> .
<i>parvus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>small</i> .
<i>reliquus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>remaining</i> .
<i>Rōmānus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>Roman</i> .

¹ -a and -um are the feminine and neuter endings : recite as if it were printed **bonus, bona, bonum**.

² This is added to the first or principal word in a sentence as the sign of a question. It throws the accent on the syllable immediately preceding it : e. g. **pūgnátne, does he fight?**

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.¹

1. Bonus¹ vir est in templō. 2. Cārus² Cassī filius in silvā est. 3. Exemplum est malum. 4. Ex māgnō oppidō fugit. 5. Multī equī sunt māgnī. 6. Puerī multī et parvī³ sunt in oppidō. 7. Multīs cum lacrimīs ex conciliō fugit. 8. Suntne virī bonī? Virī sunt bonī. 9. Fugitne? Fugit.

Write in Latin.

1. He carries grain through the large⁴ towns. 2. The remaining fields are small. 3. They give many large towns to the Roman⁵ people. 4. The example is bad. 5. With many tears she flees from the camp. 6. Many beloved friends are in the fort. 7. Are the remaining towns small? The remaining towns are small.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing an adjective.*—**bonus vir**: **bonus** is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions; Stems, **BONO** and **BONA**; declined, Singular, **bonus, bona, bonum**; **bonī, bonae, bonī**; **bonō, bonae, bonō**; **bonum, bonam, bonum**; **bone, bona, bonum**; **bonō, bonā, bonō**; Plural, **bonī, bonae, bona**; **bonōrum, bonārum, bonōrum**; **bonīs, bonīs, bonīs**; **bonōs, bonās, bona**; **bonī, bonae, bona**; **bonīs, bonīs, bonīs**; it is in the Nominative Singular Masculine to agree with its noun **vir**; rule (22). Repeat the rule. 'No general law can be laid down for the position of adjectives. On the whole they precede the noun oftener than they follow it.' B. 350, 4.

² When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a Genitive, the regular order is: Adjective, Genitive, Noun.

³ The Romans wrote **multi et parvi**, *many AND small*; the English write *many small*, without the conjunction.

⁴ Notice that the adjective has the same number, gender, and case as its noun (see 22).

⁵ In the Latin expression equivalent to *Roman people*, the adjective always follows its noun.

LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*continued*).

23. A. & G. 82: A. & S. 143: B. 64, 65: G. 73: H. 149, 150.

24. *Genitive in -ius and Dative in -i.* A. & G. 83, a: A. & S. 145; 146: B. 66, 1, 2: G. 76, 1, 2: H. 151, 1.

The list of adjectives having their Genitive in *-ius*, and Dative in *-i* should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

<i>aeger, aegra, aegrum,</i>	<i>sick.</i>
<i>alius, alia, aliud,</i>	<i>other, another.</i>
<i>liber, libera, liberum,</i>	<i>free.</i>
<i>miser, misera, miserum,</i>	<i>wretched.</i>
<i>nūllus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>none, no.</i>
<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,</i>	<i>beautiful.</i>
<i>sōlus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>alone.</i>
<i>tener, tenera, tenerum,</i>	<i>tender, delicate.</i>
<i>tōtus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>whole, entire.</i>
<i>ūllus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>any.</i>
<i>ūnus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>one.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.

1. *Filia Cassī¹ est tenera.* 2. *Virī sunt aegrī.* 3. *Per māgnam silvam fugit.* 4. *Cum Helvētiīs liberīs pūgnat.* 5. *Virī multī et miserī² in prōvinciā sunt.* 6. *Helvētius sōlus fugit.* 7. *Ūnus vir est bonus.* 8. *In aliud³ oppidum fugit.* 9. *Nūllum bellum est bonum.* 10. *Sine ūllā causā pūgnat.* 11. *Amatne Cassius filium Lūcī?* *Cassius filium Lūcī amat.* 12. *Ūnus ē filiīs⁴ Cassī trāns Rhodanum fugit.* 13. *In⁵ prōvinciā est.*

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ How does *filia Cassi* differ from *Cassi filia*? (LN. III., NOTE 3.)
- ² See LN. VI., NOTE 3.
- ³ What is the Nominative Neuter Singular of *alius*? The Genitive Singular? The Dative Singular?
- ⁴ Translate *unus ē filiis* as if it read *unus filiōrum*.
- ⁵ How is *in* to be rendered when used with the Ablative?



LESSON VIII.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPPOSITION.

25. Appositives. A. & G. 183; 184: A. & S. 324; 325: B. 169, 1, 2: G. 320; 321: H. 359, NOTE 2; 363.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Ad oppidum Genāvam* (appositive) *properat*, *He hastens to the town of Geneva.*
2. *Titus Labiēnus* (appositive) *est aeger*, *Titus Labienus the lieutenant is sick.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>aedificium</i> , -ī, n.	<i>building, edifice.</i>
<i>arma</i> , ¹ -ōrum, n.	<i>arms, weapons.</i>
<i>Belgae</i> , -ārum, m.	<i>the Belgae.</i>
<i>cōpla</i> , -ae, f.	<i>plenty; pl. troops.</i>
<i>Gallia</i> , -ae, f.	<i>Gaul, ancient France.</i>
<i>Labiēnus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>Labienus.</i>
<i>locus</i> , ² -ī, m.	<i>place.</i>
<i>mātūrus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>ripe.</i>
<i>periculum</i> , -ī, n.	<i>danger.</i>
<i>privātus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>private.</i>
<i>Sēquani</i> , -ōrum, m.	<i>the Sequani.</i>
<i>Titus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>Titus.</i>
<i>victōria</i> , -ae, f.	<i>victory.</i>

¹ *arma*, like the English *arms*, is used only in the plural.

² *locus* is both masculine and neuter in the plural and is declined in that number as follows: Nom., *loci* and *loca*; Gen., *locorum*; Dat., *locis*; Acc., *locos* and *loca*; Voc., *loci* and *loca*; Abl., *locis*.

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns which are in apposition or used with prepositions, and the adjectives.

1. Cum Titō¹ Labiēnō lēgātō pūgnat. 2. Cum filiābus² pulchris Titī Labiēnī ad oppidum Genāvam³ properat. 3. Ex oppidō Genāvā³ fugit. 4. Frūmentum in agrīs est mātūrum. 5. Cōpia frūmentī mātūrī est in agrō. 6. Titus in⁴ Galliam fugit. Cassius in⁴ Galliā est. 7. Ex⁵ prōvinciā Galliā properant. Ā⁵ prōvinciā Galliā properant. 8. Cum cōpiīs Belgārum trāns Rhodanum⁶ in Galliam fugit. 9. Nūlla victōria sine armīs. 10. Lūciō reliqua privāta aedificia dat. 11. Helvētiī in multis locīs pūgnant. 12. Pūgnantne sine periculō? Sine periculō pūgnant.

Write in Latin.

1. We hasten through the entire town. 2. We hasten through the entire town of Geneva. 3. He flees into the province of Gaul with Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 4. The Sequani alone of the Gauls are wretched. 5. The Belgae fight with Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 6. Are the sons of Cassius good? One of the sons⁷ of Cassius is good.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the general rules for gender? (6) What is the gender of nouns of the First Declension? (9) Of the Second Declension? (14)

² What irregular case-endings have *dea* and *filia*? (11)

³ See 25 and EXAMPLE 1.

⁴ With which cases are prepositions used in Latin? Which prepositions are used only with the Ablative? Which with both the Ablative and Accu-

sative? When are *in* and *sub* used with the Ablative? When with the Accusative? (16, 19)

⁵ *ē*, *ex* signifies *out of, from*, in the sense of *from within* a place; *ē*, *ab*, *from*, in the sense of *from near* a place.

⁶ Which syllable of *Rhodanus* takes the accent? Why? (4)

⁷ See LN. VII., NOTE 4.

LESSON IX.

VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

26. Learn the following definitions when they are given in the grammar: Use of the Verb; Transitive and Intransitive Verbs; Active Voice; Use of the Indicative Mood; Use of the Present Tense; Person and Number; Conjugation.

A. & G. 108, *a-d*; 111; 121; 122, *a*; 264; 276.

A. & S. 190-193; 198 (1); 201; 208; 217, *a, b*; 461.

B. 94; 95; 97; 98; 257; 271.

G. 16, 4; 112, 1-4; 213; 253; 254; 227; 120, 1.

H. 192; 193; 194; 195, I.; 474; 466; 199; 201.

EXERCISE.

Review the verbs given in preceding vocabularies and parse the verb forms used in the preceding exercises; i. e., state the voice, mood, tense, person, and number of each form, and give the reasons for your statements.

LESSON X.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

27. Personal Endings of the Active Voice and Stem.

A. & G. 21; 116, SING. PLUR.: A. & S. 55; 209; 213 (1): B. 96; 97, I, 1: G. 114, 1, 2: H. 247, PERSON., ACT., MEANING; 250.

28. The Present Stem is formed from the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending *re* in the First, Second, and Fourth

Conjugations, and *ere* in the Third : e.g. *PUTĀre* is a Present Infinitive Active and *PUTĀ* its Present Stem ; so *dīc* from *dīcere*.

29. Learn the *conjugation*¹ and *meanings* of the Present Indicative Active of *amō*. A. & G. 128 : A. & S. 222 : B. 101 : G. 122 : H. 205 ; 247, 1.

30. Observe that the Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation is conjugated by annexing the Personal Endings (27) to the Present Stem (§8) ; also that the *first person singular* takes the termination *ō*, which absorbs the final stem-vowel *ā*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>amō, amāre,</i>	<i>love.</i> ²
<i>convocō, convocāre,</i>	<i>call together, summon.</i>
<i>cōfirmō, cōfirmāre,</i>	<i>establish, strengthen.</i>
<i>importō, importāre,</i>	<i>bring in, import.</i>
<i>occupō, occupāre,</i>	<i>seize, occupy.</i>
<i>vāstō, vāstāre,</i>	<i>lay waste, devastate.</i>

Pronounce ; translate ; inflect the verbs and give their elements.³

1. *Importās,*⁴ *importātis, importāmus.* 2. *Amāmus, amant, amat.* 3. *Convocō, convocās, convocat.* 4. *Convocāmus, convocātis, convocant.* 5. *Cōfirmant, cōfirmātis, cōfirmāmus.* 6. *Cōfirmat, cōfirmās, cōfirmō.* 7. *Occupō, amās, importat.* 8. *Importō, amātis, occupant.* 9. *Occupāmus, importātis, amō.* 10. *Occupās, occupat, occupātis.* 11. *Importāsne ? Importō.*

Write in Latin.

1. I am importing, you are establishing, he is loving.
2. We occupy, you summon, they devastate. 3. We do import, you do devastate, they do summon. 4. I devastate, you devastate, he devastates. 5. We are devastating, you are devastating, they are devastating.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The *conjugation* of a verb is the change made in its ending to express voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

² Only the *general* meaning of the verb, without reference to person, number, mood, tense, or voice will be given in the Vocabularies. The *special* meanings can be learned with the aid of the grammar.

³ The elements of a verb in the present tense are the *stem* and *personal ending*: e. g. *amāmus* has the stem *amā*, signifying *love*, and the personal ending *mus*, signifying *we*. Compare LN. IV., NOTE 3.

⁴ *importās* may be rendered *you are importing*, *you do import*, or *you import*; translate each verb the three ways.

⁵ What is the Present Stem of *putāre*? What does the personal ending *nt* signify? *mus*? *s*? *tis*? Define the Indicative Mood. The Active Voice. The Present Tense. How is the Present Stem found? (28)



LESSON XI.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

31. A. & G. 171; 172; 180; 181: A. & S. 309-311: B. 161, 1; 163; 164: G. 201; 202: H. 346; 347; 350; 356, 1, 2; 358; 360.

32. Subject Nominative. A. & G. 173: A. & S. 316: B. 166: G. 203: H. 368.

33. Agreement of Verb. A. & G. 204: A. & S. 316: B. 254, 1: G. 211: H. 460.

34. Direct Object. A. & G. 237: A. & S. 392: B. 172: G. 330: H. 371.

EXAMPLES.

- 1.** *Puer* (subject) *amat* (predicate), *the boy loves*.
- 2.** *Titus concillium* ¹ (direct object) *convocat*, *Titus summons a council*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>dē</i> , prep. w. abl.	<i>down from, concerning, for.</i>
<i>expūgnō</i> , <i>expūgnāre</i> ,	<i>storm, capture.</i>
<i>Gallus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>a Gaul.</i>
<i>imperium</i> , -ī, n.	<i>empire, supreme power.</i>
<i>pūgnō</i> , <i>pūgnāre</i> ,	<i>fight, contend.</i>
<i>Rōmānus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>a Roman.</i>
<i>servus</i> , -ī, m.	<i>slave.</i>
<i>vēxō</i> , <i>vēxāre</i> ,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

Pronounce; translate; name the subject and predicate; conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassius² oppidum³ expūgnat.⁴ 2. Helvētīi oppidum expūgnant. 3. Gallī tōtum⁵ oppidum occupant. 4. Gallī multa oppida occupant. 5. Sēquanī agrōs vāstant. 6. Agrōs pulchrōs vāstāmus.⁶ 7. Māgnōs agrōs vāstās. 8. Cassius concilium⁷ convocat. 9. Germānī Gallōs vēxant. 10. Rōmānī oppidum Genāvam⁸ expūgnant. 11. Titus Labiēnus lēgātus oppidum occupat. 12. Rōmānī dē imperiō⁹ pūgnant. 13. Dē imperiō pūgnāmus. 14. Dē imperiō pūgnātis.

Write in Latin.

1. The slave fights. 2. The slaves are fighting.¹⁰ 3. The Gauls are storming the town.¹ 4. The Gauls storm many towns. 5. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields. 6. The Gauls fight for empire. 7. The Germans occupy the town of Geneva. 8. Cassius the legate summons a large council. 9. We occupy the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that in a Latin sentence the subject stands first, the verb last, and the object between.

² See 32 and LN. IV., NOTE 1.

³ See 34.

⁴ Why is *expūgnat* in the third person singular? (33)

⁵ See 24 and 22. Which adjectives have their Genitive in *-ius* and Dative in *-i*?

⁶ The subject of a verb in the *first* and *second* person is generally expressed by the personal ending alone; hence *vāstāmus* includes both the simple subject and the simple predicate : *devastate we.*
vāstā - mus.

⁷ See 17.

⁹ See 16.

⁸ See 25.

¹⁰ See LN. X., NOTE 4.

LESSON XII.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.—IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

35. Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of *amō*. A. & G. 118 (*for endings*); 128 (*for conjugation*): A. & S. 222; 224, 1, 2: B. 96; 97, 1, 1; 101: G. 114, 1, 2, (b); 122; 132; 133: H. 205; 247, 1; 243.

36. *Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses.* A. & G. 277; 278: A. & S. 461; 464: B. 260, 1–3; 261: G. 231; 242: H. 468; 470.

37. Observe that the same Stem and Personal Endings are used in the conjugation of the Imperfect and Future as in the Present; that between these, however, there is a Tense-Sign, *ba* in the Imperfect and *bi* in the Future; that the first singular of the Future has the termination *ō*, like the Present; that in the third plural of the Future *u* takes the place of *i*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>Aquilēla</i> , -ae, f.	<i>Aquileia</i> .
<i>Aquitānia</i> , -ae, f.	<i>Aquitania</i> .
<i>Aquitāni</i> , -ōrum, m.	<i>the Aquitani</i> .
circum, prep. w. acc.	<i>around, near</i> .
<i>Helvētius</i> , -a, -um,	<i>of the Helvetii</i> .
hiemō, hiemāre,	<i>pass the winter</i> .
superō, superāre,	<i>overcome</i> .

Pronounce; translate; conjugate the verbs and give their elements.¹

1. Titus rēgnum occupat. 2. Titus rēgnum occupābat.
 3. Titus rēgnum occupābit. 4. Rēgnum occupābāmus.
 5. Rēgnum occupābimus. 6. Rēgnum occupābō. 7. Cō-
 pia² circum Aquilēiam³ hiemābant. 8. Aquitāni cir-
 cum Genāvam hiemābunt. 9. Aquitānōs superābis.
 10. Rōmāni Helvētiōs superābunt. 11. Galli multa
 loca⁴ in Aquitāniā⁵ occupant. 12. Multi Germāni agrōs
 Helvētiōs vāstābant..

Write in Latin.

1. We are overcoming, we were overcoming, we shall overcome. 2. You are storming, you were storming, you will storm. 3. Titus will storm the town. 4. Titus was storming the town. 5. Titus storms many towns. 6. The Romans will pass the winter near Aquileia. 7. The Aquitani are passing the winter near Geneva. 8. The Gauls were fighting for⁶ empire. 9. The Romans fight for glory.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The elements of a verb in the Imperfect and Future Tenses are *the stem, tense-sign, personal ending* : e. g. *love will you* **amā - bi - tis** has the Stem **amā**, *love*; the Future Tense-Sign **bi**, *will*; the Personal Ending **tis**, *you*.

² What meaning has *cōpiæ* in the Singular? LN. VIII., Vy.

³ See 12.

⁴ Decline *locā*. LN. VIII., Vy., NOTE 2.

⁵ See 19.

⁶ *For*, in the sense of *concerning, about*, is to be rendered by *dē*.

⁷ How is the Present Stem found? (28) Remember that the Present Stem and the tenses formed upon it — Present, Imperfect, Future — denote *incomplete, repeated, or attempted* action.

LESSON XIII.

MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

38. Modifiers. A. & G. 178, *a, b*; 179: G. 288, I., II.; 327, I., II.: H. 357, 1; 359, NOTE 1; 361, 1.

39. Indirect Object. A. & G. 224: A. & S. 374, (2): B. 187, I.: G. 345: H. 384, I., II.

40. Genitive with Nouns. A. & G. 213: A. & S. 351: B. 195: G. 360, 1, 2; 362: H. 395.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Titus Labiēnus lēgātus cōnsilia Gallōrum ēnūntiat,**¹ *Titus Labienus the lieutenant reports the plans of the Gauls.*
2. **Cassius Titō filiam in mātirimōnium dat,**² *Cassius gives to Titus a daughter in marriage.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ Of this sentence, **Titus Labiēnus** is the subject and is modified by **lēgātus**, an appositive; **cōnsilia Gallōrum ēnūntiat** is the predicate and is made up of the verb **ēnūntiat** and its modifier **cōnsilia**, a direct object; **cōnsilia** is modified by **Gallōrum**, a genitive.

² Of this sentence, **Cassius** is the subject and is not modified; **Titō filiam in mātirimōnium dat** is the predicate, and is made up of the verb **dat** and its modifiers, viz.: **Titō**, an indirect object; **filiam**, a direct object; and **in mātirimōnium**, a phrase.

VOCABULARY.

dō, dare.	<i>give.</i>
ēnūntiō, ēnūntiāre,	<i>report.</i>
mātirimōnium, -i, n.	<i>marriage.</i>
in mātirimōnium dare,	<i>to give in marriage.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ **conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.**

1. Cassius² cōnsilia Belgārum³ ēnūntiābit.
2. Rōmānīs⁴ cōnsilia Belgārum ēnūntiābit.
3. Titus filiam in⁵ mātirimōnium dabit.⁶
4. Ubi est Cassius filius Lūcī lēgātī?
5. Cassius in prōvinciā Aquitāniā est.
6. Helvētīi multa loca in Aquitāniā occupant.
7. Cassius concilium Rōmānōrum convocat.
8. Deōs⁷ et deās⁸ in templa convocat.
9. Rōmānī oppida multa et māgna⁹ expūgnābant.
10. Amicitiam cum Helvētīs cōfirmant.
11. Tōtum¹⁰ oppidum ūllō¹⁰ sine periculō occupābitis.
12. Galli agrōs multōs et pulchrōs⁹ in Aquitāniā vāstābunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To analyze a simple sentence is to name its subject and predicate; the modifiers of the subject, if any; the verb, and its modifiers, if any; see NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES.

² What is the Genitive and Vocative of *Cassius*? (17 and 18)

³ See 40.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ A preposition with its noun is a *Phrase*; when the *Phrase* limits a verb, as in this sentence, it is an *Adverbial Phrase*; when it limits a noun, as in sentence 6, it is an *Adjective Phrase*.

⁶ Observe that in *dō* the characteristic *a* is short; in the other verbs of the First Conjugation it is long.

⁷ See 20.

⁸ See 11.

⁹ See LN. VI., NOTE 3.

¹⁰ See 24.



LESSON XIV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

41. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of *amō*. A. & G. 118; 128: A. & S. 210; 213 (2); 222; 224 (5): B. 101; 118, 1; 96: G. 122: H. 205; 243, TENSE-SIGNS of PLUP. and F. PERF.; 247, 1, 2.

42. *Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.* A. & G. 280; 281: A. & S. 462 (2), (3): B. 263; 264: G. 241; 244: H. 472; 473.

43. *What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative?* A. & G. 115, c; 279: A. & S. 462 (1): B. 262: G. 235; 239: H. 471, I., II.

44. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of every verb, whatever its conjugation may be, are conjugated like the same tenses of *amō*. These tenses are formed on the Perfect Stem and denote *completed action*.

45. *The Perfect Stem* is found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping the ending *i*: e. g. Perfect Indicative *vāstāvī*, Perfect Stem *vāstāv*.

VOCABULARY.

cōfirmō,	cōfirmāre,	cōfirmāvī, ¹	<i>establish, strengthen.</i>
convocō,	convocāre,	convocāvī,	<i>call together, summon.</i>
dō,	dare,	dedī, ²	<i>give.</i>
expūgnō,	expūgnāre,	expūgnāvī,	<i>storm, capture.</i>
hiemō,	hiemāre,	hiemāvī,	<i>pass the winter.</i>
occupō,	occupāre,	occupāvī,	<i>seize, occupy.</i>
Rōma, -ae, f.			<i>Rome.</i>
superō,	superāre,	superāvī,	<i>overcome, subdue.</i>
vāstō,	vāstāre,	vāstāvī,	<i>lay waste, devastate.</i>
vēxō,	vēxāre,	vēxāvī,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

¹ In this Vocabulary the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active, the Present Infinitive Active, and the First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active are given.

² See LN. XIII., NOTE 6; observe that the *Perfect stem* of *dō* is *dēd*.

Pronounce; translate; conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of the Indicative Mood of each verb.

1. Cassius multōs agrōs vāstāvit.² 2. Concilium Gal-lōrum convocāverō.³ 3. Gallī tōtum oppidum occupā-verant. 4. Helvētiī castra occupāverint. 5. Rōmānī agrum Helvētium vāstāvērunt.² 6. Amīcitiam cum Rō-mānīs cōfirmāverit. 7. Cōpiaē circum Rōmam hiemā-vēre.² 8. Cassius Titō filiam in mātirimōnium dedit.² 9. Rōmānī Helvētiōs vēxāvērunt.² 10. Sēquanī Ger-mānōs superāvērunt.² 11. Circum Rōmam hiemāverant. 12. Oppidum Aquilēiam occupāvī.

Write in Latin.

1. The Aquitani have stormed the town. 2. The Aquitani will have stormed the town. 3. The Aquitani had stormed the town. 4. I have given a daughter in marriage. 5. I had given a daughter in marriage. 6. I shall have given a daughter in marriage. 7. I gave a

daughter in marriage to the son of Cassius. 8. You have summoned a council of Romans. 9. You had summoned a council of Romans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ A *Synopsis* of the Indicative Mood consists of the *First Person Singular* of each tense : e. g. the synopsis of *vāstāvit* is *vāstō*, *vāstābam*, *vāstābō*, *vāstāvi*, *vāstāveram*, *vāstāverō*.

² Translate each Perfect in accordance with both its uses : *Cassius vāstāvit*, *Cassius has laid waste*, and *Cassius laid waste*. (See 43)

³ Which tenses are formed on the *Perfect Stem* and what action do they denote ? (44) Which are formed on the *Present Stem* and what action do they denote ? (LN. XII., NOTE 7.) The Pluperfect denotes that an action *is completed* in what time ? (42) The Future Perfect ? The Present Tense denotes that an action *is going on* in what time ? (26) The Imperfect Tense ? (36) The Future Tense ? Give the elements of each verb in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses : e. g. *amāv-ēra-nt* ^{loved had they} has the Perfect Stem *amāv*, *loved* ; the Pluperfect Tense-Sign *ēra*, *had* ; the Personal Ending *nt*, *they*.

LESSON XV.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : IMPERATIVE MOOD.

46. Learn the Imperative Mood, Active Voice, of *amō* and its meanings. A. & G. 128 ; 118, for *personal endings* : A. & S. 213(3) ; 222 : B. 101 ; 96 : G. 122 ; 114, 1 : H. 205 ; 247, 3, for *pers. endings*.

47. *Use of the Imperative.* A. & G. 269 : A. & S. 527 : B. 281 : G. 266 : H. 487.

VOCABULARY.

avus, -i, m.

Divitiacus, -i, m.

iuvō, *iuvāre*, *iūvī*,

mātūrō, *mātūrāre*, *mātūrāvī*,

nātūra, -ae, f.

grandfather.

Divitiacus.

help, aid.

make haste, hasten.

nature.

nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī,	announce.
proellum, -ī, n.	battle.
socer, socerī, m.	father-in-law.
vītō, vītāre, vītāvī,	avoid, shun.
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī,	call.

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns; conjugate the Imperatives and give the rule for their use. (47)

1. Iuvā,¹ mātūrā, nūntiā. 2. Iuvātō, mātūrātō, nūntiātō. 3. Iuvāte, mātūrāte, nūntiāte. 4. Vītā, Divitiace,² proellum. 5. Vītā, Ō ave,³ periculum. 6. Date, virī, Rōmānīs⁴ arma.⁵ 7. Vocā, socer, puerōs. 8. Mātūrā, Cassī,⁶ Titō⁴ nūntiāre. 9. Mātūrāte, virī, oppidum expūgnāre. 10. Vāstāte agrōs. 11. Vāstāte multōs agrōs. 12. Vāstāte tōtam prōvinciam.

Write in Latin.

1. Call the men. 2. Help the boys. 3. Shun the danger. 4. Avoid a battle, Divitiacus. 5. Summon a council, Cassius. 6. Call the men, my grandfather. 7. Announce to Cassius. 8. Make haste to announce to Divitiacus. 9. Men, give arms to the Belgae. 10. Import corn.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that the Personal Endings are added to the Present Stem (28); that the Second Person Singular of the Present is the same in form as the Present Stem; that, like the English, the Latin Imperative has no First Person.

² A. & S. 592; B. 350, 3; H. 569, VI.

³ Ō ave, O grandfather, or my grandfather.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See LN. VIII., VY.

⁶ See 13.

What is the Present Stem of each verb in the lesson? The Perfect Stem? Which Stem is used in the Imperative? Does the Imperative then denote *incomplete* or *completed* action? What are the Personal Endings of the Imperative?

LESSON XVI.

VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE.

48. Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of **amō**. A. & G. 118; 128, page 93; 289: A. & S. 214; 222, page 108; B. 95, 1, 2; 101, page 59: G. 112, 5; 122, page 73: H. 200, I.-IV.; 205; 248, ACTIVE.

49. Principal Parts (Stem Forms). A. & G. 122, b: A. & S. 220, NOTE: B. 99: G. 120, 2: H. 202; 203; 220, CONJ. I.

50. The Supine Stem is found in the Supine in **um** by dropping the **um**: e. g. **cūrātum** is a Supine in **um** and **cūrāt** its Supine Stem.

51. Each Verb has regularly three Stems, the Present (**28**), the Perfect (**45**), and the Supine (**50**). Name the three Stems of each verb in the following Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.¹

amō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,²	<i>love.</i>
cūrō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,²	<i>care for.</i>
dō,	dare,³	dedi,	datum,³	<i>give.</i>
iuvō,	iuvāre,	iūvi,	iūtum,	<i>help, aid.</i>
negō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>deny.</i>
pugnō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>fight.</i>
vāstō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>lay waste, devastate.</i>
vēxō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>
vocō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum,	<i>call.</i>

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Principal Parts (**49**) will be given hereafter in the Vocabularies; these Parts should always be learned.

² Most verbs of the First Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like **amō**. To form the Principal Parts let **-āre, -āvi, -ātum** take the place of final **ō** in the Present Indicative Active: e. g. **cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvi, cūrātum**.

³ See LN. XIII., NOTE 6.

How many Infinitives has each verb in the Active Voice? On which Stem is each formed? Name the Infinitives of **dō, cūrō, iuvō, and vāstō**.

What is the Ending of each Infinitive ? On which Stems are the Active Participles formed ? What is the Ending of each Participle ? What is the Future Active Participle of *dō*, *negō*, *pūgnō* ? What is the Present Participle of each ? On which Stem is the Gerund formed ? Form and decline the Gerund of *dō* and *cūrō*. What are the Endings of the Supine ?



LESSON XVII.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

52. Infinitive as Object. A. & G. 272 : A. & S. 533 (1) : B. 331 : G. 527 : H. 534.

53. Subject of the Infinitive. A. & G. 240, f : A. & S. 530 : B. 184 : G. 203, REMARK 1 : H. 536.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Dicit Rōmānōs¹ oppidum² expūgnāre,³ he says (that⁴) the Romans⁴ are storming⁴ the town.**
- 2. Dicit Rōmānōs oppidum expūgnāvisse, he says (that) the Romans have stormed the town ; or he says (that) the Romans stormed the town.**
- 3. Dicit Rōmānōs oppidum expūgnātūrōs⁵ esse, he says (that) the Romans are about to storm the town ; or he says (that) the Romans will storm the town.**

Notes on the Examples.

¹ See 53.

² See 34.

³ The whole expression *Rōmānōs oppidum expūgnāre* is the Direct Object of *dicit* (see 52).

⁴ Observe that the Infinitive *expūgnāre* is translated by the Indicative *are storming* ; the Subject Accusative *Rōmānōs*, by the Subject Nominative *the Romans* ; and the Conjunction *that* is supplied.

⁵ Observe that the Participle of the Future Infinitive Active agrees with the Subject of the Infinitive in gender, number, and case.

VOCABULARY.

Aedui, -ōrum, m.	<i>the Aedui.</i>
Ariovistus, -ī, m.	<i>Ariovistus.</i>
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,¹	<i>show, declare.</i>
dīcit,	<i>he says.</i>
existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	<i>think, suppose.</i>
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	<i>deny.</i>
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	<i>announce.</i>
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	<i>think.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns and Infinitives.

1. Dīcit² Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vēxāre.³ 2. Putat Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vēxāvisse. 3. Nūntiat Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vēxātūrōs esse. 4. Existimat Ariovistum rēgnum in Galliā occupātūrōs esse. 5. Titus existimat Ariovistum rēgnum in Galliā occupāvisse. 6. Ariovistus nūntiat Germānōs agrum Helvētium vāstātūrōs esse. 7. Dīcit Rōmānōs frūmentum importāre. 8. Existimat Helvētiōs frūmentum importātūrōs esse. 9. Dīcit Gallōs frūmentum Rōmānīs⁴ datūrōs esse. 10. Dicit Aeduōs Rōmānīs⁴ arma datūrōs esse.

Write in Latin.

1. He says² (that⁵) the Sequani are about to harass the Helvetii. 2. He says (that) the Germans are laying waste the Helvetian territory. 3. Titus thinks (that) the Romans will give corn to the Aedui. 4. Titus thinks (that) the Romans are importing corn. 5. He says (that) Cassius has summoned a council of Romans. 6. He announces (that) the Aquitani have stormed the towns.

Notes.

¹ The verbs in this VOCABULARY may have as Object an Infinitive with its Subject Accusative.

² Study carefully the EXAMPLES and NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES before attempting to translate the sentences.

³ *Form for parsing an Infinitive.* — *vēxāre* is a Transitive (26) Verb ; Principal Parts (49), *vēxō, vēxāre, vēxāvī, vēxātum* ; Stems, *vēxā* (28), *vēxāv* (45), *vēxāt* (50) ; Infinitives of the Active Voice, *vēxāre, vēxāvisse, vēxātūrus esse* ; it is made in the Present Infinitive Active and with its Subject *Rōmānōs* is the Object of *dicit* ; rule (see 52).

⁴ See 39.

⁵ Words in parentheses are not to be translated ; see also Notes on the Examples, 4.

LESSON XVIII.

GENERAL EXERCISE. — ABLATIVE.

54. Ablative of Means. A. & G. 248, c, 1 : A. & S. 407 : B. 218 : G. 401 : H. 420.

VOCABULARY.

<i>animus, -ī, m.</i>	<i>mind.</i>
<i>conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>win, conciliate.</i>
<i>cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>establish, encourage.</i>
<i>inter, prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>between, among.</i>
<i>Norēia, -ae, f.</i>	<i>Noreia.</i>
<i>oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>attack, besiege, assault.</i>
<i>propter, prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>on account of.</i>
<i>Trēvirī, -ōrum, m.</i>	<i>the Treviri.</i>
<i>verbum, -ī, n.</i>	<i>word.</i>

Pronounce ; translate ; analyze ;¹ parse.

1. Inter² Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. 2. Propter² angustias. 3. Norēiam oppugnāmus.³ 4. Norēiam oppugnābant. 5. Rōmānī Norēiam oppugnāvērunt.⁴ 6. Trēvirī Norēiam oppugnābunt. 7. Dicit Trēvirōs⁵ Norēiam oppugnātūrōs⁶ esse.⁷ 8. Norēiam oppugnātis. 9. Norēiam oppugnāte.⁸ 10. Divitiacus Gallōrum animōs verbis⁹ cōfirmāvit. 11. Divitiacus Gallōrum animōs verbis cōfirmābit. 12. Titus putat Divitiacum Gallōrum animōs verbis cōfirmātūrum esse. 13. Cassius

rēgnum conciliāvit. 14. Cassius rēgnum cōpiīs conciliābat. 15. Cassius rēgnum cōpiīs Divitiacō¹⁰ conciliābit. 16. Negat Cassium rēgnum cōpiīs Divitiacō conciliātūrum esse. 17. Titus Divitiacō¹⁰ filiam in mātirimōnium¹¹ dedit.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XIII., NOTE 5.

³ *Form for parsing a verb in the Indicative Mood.* — **oppūgnāmus** is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), **oppūgnō**, **oppūgnāre**, **oppūgnāvī**, **oppūgnātum**; it is of the First Conjugation, because the characteristic vowel is **ā**; Stems, **OPPŪGNĀ**, **OPPŪGNĀV**, **OPPŪGNĀT**; Synopsis (LN. XIV., NOTE 1), **oppūgnō**, **oppūgnābam**, **oppūgnābō**, **oppūgnāvī**, **oppūgnāveram**, **oppūgnāverō**; conjugated, **oppūgnō**, **oppūgnās**, **oppūgnat**, **oppūgnāmus**, **oppūgnātis**, **oppūgnant**; it is made in the First Person Plural of the Present Indicative Active to agree with its Subject, a pronoun (**nōs**, *we*) understood; rule (33).

⁴ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See LN. XVII., Notes on the Examples, 5.

⁷ See 52. In what two ways may the Future Infinitive be translated? See LN. XVII., Example 3.

⁸ See 47. How does this form differ from the Second Person Plural of the Present Indicative?

⁹ **verbis**, *with words*, or *by means of words*; it is a modifier (38) of **cōnfirmāvit**.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ See 19.

LESSON XIX.

THE VERB SUM.

55. Learn the entire conjugation of **sum**. A. & G. 119: A. & S. 215: B. 100: G. 116: H. 204.

56. What is an Irregular Verb? A. & G. 137: A. & S. 239: B. 124: H. 289. What are the Stems of **sum**? What are the Personal Endings? What are the Principal Parts of **sum**? Where are the following forms made: **eram**, **est**, **fuērunt**, **simus**, **erunt**, **fuerant**, **estō**, **fuisse**, **fuerō**?

LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION : NOUNS.

57. Stem and Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*: A. & S. 89; 90, *a, b*: B. 18; 19, 1-4: G. 17; 26, REMARK: H. 46-47, including *fine print*.

58. A. & G. 48, *a-d*; 49, *w. declension of cōnsul, nōmen, honor, leō, frāter, virgō, corpus*: A. & S. 103, *a-f*; 104, *decl. of cōnsul, leō, virgō, nōmen, pater*; 107, *honor*: B. 34; 35; 36: G. 35; 36; 39, B; 41-46: H. 55; 56; 57, *Case-Suffixes*; 60, *Paradigms*, 1, 3, 4.

VOCABULARY.

accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	<i>accuse, censure.</i>
Caesar, Caesaris, m.	<i>Caesar.</i>
cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.	<i>consul.</i>
citrā, prep. w. acc.	<i>this side of.</i>
flūmen, flūminis, n.	<i>river.</i>
frāter, frātris, m.	<i>brother.</i>
māter, mātris, f.	<i>mother.</i>
pater, patris, m.	<i>father.</i>
Sēquanā, -ae, m.	<i>the Seine.</i>
soror, sorōris, f.	<i>sister.</i>
uxor, uxōris, f.	<i>wife.</i>

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun and give its Stem and Endings; parse the verbs.

1. $\bar{A}^1$ flūmine Rhodanō fugit. 2. $\bar{E}^1$ flūmine Rhodanō frātre^m portat. 3. Ad flūmen Sēquanā^m properat. 4. Prōvincia est citrā flūmen Rhēnum. 5. Caesar cōsul² Titum lēgātum² accūsāverat. 6. Negat Caesarem cōnsule^m Titum lēgātum accūsāvisse. 7. Uxor patrem et mātrem et sorōrem amāvit. 8. Cōnsul fuerat aeger. 9. Sēquanī sōlī erunt liberī. 10. Dicit Sēquanōs sōlōs futūrōs esse liberōs. 11. Caesar fuit cōnsul. 12. Ariovistus nūntiat Caesarem cōnsule^m fuisse.

Write in Latin.

1. He flees to the river Rhone. 2. The province of Aquitania was this side the river Seine. 3. Caesar has fought for supreme power. 4. He denies (that) Caesar has fought for supreme power. 5. Caesar the consul was a friend of Cassius. 6. The father and mother and brother were sick.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. IV., VY., and LN. VIII., NOTE 4.

² See 25.

How is the Stem of a noun found? What are the Case-Endings of the Third Declension? Which Case-Endings do nouns with *liquid* Stems omit? How does the Stem of *flūminis* differ in form from the Nominative Singular?

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

59. A. & G. 21; 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*; 44; 45, *a-c*; 46: A. & S. 55; 101, *a, c*; 102; 104, decl. of *caput*: B. 18; 19; 30-33: G. 35, 2; 36, 2; 50; 51, 3; 52, 2; 53, declension of *aetās*; 55: H. 24, 1; 30; 36, 2; *all of 56-59*.

VOCABULARY.

atque ¹ or <i>ac</i> , ¹ conj.	<i>and</i> .
caput, capit ^{is} , n.	<i>head</i> .
custōs, custōd ^{is} , m.	<i>guard</i> .
Dumnorix, Dumnorig ^{is} , m.	<i>Dumnorix</i> .
extrēm ^{us} , -a, -um,	<i>furthermost</i> .
imperātor, imperātōr ^{is} , m.	<i>commander-in-chief, general</i> .
mīles, mīlit ^{is} , m.	<i>soldier</i> .
mulier, mulier ^{is} , f.	<i>woman</i> .
obses, obsid ^{is} , m. and f.	<i>hostage</i> .
princeps, princip ^{is} , m.	<i>chief</i> .
rēx, rēg ^{is} , m.	<i>king</i> .

Pronounce ; translate ; decline each noun, give its Stem and form its Nominatives.

1. Ariovistus erat princeps Germānōrum. 2. Rēgi¹ prōvinciam dat. 3. Cum Dumnorige frātre² Divitiaci pūgnābant. 4. Pūgnāvēruntne militēs? Militēs pūgnāvērunt. 5. Extrēmum oppidum prōvinciae erat citrā flūmen. 6. Imperātor dē imperiō pūgnābat. 7. Custōdēs servōrum sunt militēs bonī. 8. Iūlia erat mulier bona. 9. Caput rēgis erit in periculō. 10. Cassius cum principe tōtius Galliae pūgnābit. 11. Imperātor cum militibus in Etrūriam⁴ properat.

Notes.

¹ *atque* is used before vowels and consonants ; *et*, only before consonants.

² Indirect object, (39).

³ See 25.

⁴ Words not given in the Special Vocabularies can be found in the General Vocabulary.

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

60. *Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing.* A. & G. 239, 1 : A. & S. 394 (1) : B. 177 : G. 340 : H. 373.

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesarem cōsulem creāvērunt, *they elected Caesar consul.*
2. Oppidum appellant Genāvam, *they call the town Geneva.*

VOCABULARY.

Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, m.	<i>the Allobroges.</i>
appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	<i>name, call.</i>
creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	<i>elect, appoint.</i>
lēgātīō, lēgātīōnis, f.	<i>embassy.</i>
lēx, lēgis, f.	<i>law.</i>

pāx, pācis, f.	peace.
proximus, -a, -um,	nearest.
senātor, senātōris, m.	senator.
suus, -a, -um,	his, their.
virtūs, virtūtis, f.	valor, virtue.

Pronounce; translate; analyze; ¹ parse.

1. Populus Caesarem ² cōsulem ² creāvit. 2. Ancum Marcium rēgem populus creāvit. 3. Nūntiat Ancum Marcium rēgem populum ³ creāvisse.⁴ 4. Populus Rōmānus senātōrēs patrēs appellat. 5. Allobrogēs suum ⁵ oppidum Genāvam appellāvērunt. 6. Dumnorix, frāter ⁶ Divitiaci,⁷ rēgnū occupāvit. 7. Helvētīi cū proximīs principibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmant. 8. Caesar oppidum virtūte ⁸ militum suōrum ⁵ expūgnāvit. 9. Lēgātiōnis principem Dumnorigem creāvērunt. 10. Belgae et Galli linguā ⁹ et lēgibus ⁹ differunt (*differ*).

Write in Latin.

1. The chief gives laws to the people. 2. Did the Romans elect the man consul? 3. The Romans elected the man consul. 4. They call the town Geneva. 5. The Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 6. He says the Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 7. Dumnorix will seize the royal power. 8. We shall take the town by means of the soldiers' valor. 9. Dumnorix was chief of the Aedui.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.

² See 60 and Examples.

³ See 53.

⁴ See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

⁵ When *suus* refers to a noun in the Plural, as in sentence 5 it refers to *Allobrogēs*, render it *their*: when it refers to a noun in the Singular, as in sentence 8 it refers to *Caesar*, render it *his*, *her*, or *its*. It generally refers to the subject of its clause.

⁶ See 25.

⁷ See 40.

⁸ See 54.

⁹ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

61. A. & G. Review 44–49, including all Paradigms under these references: A. & S. 105; 106, a, b, d, e; 107, and the declensions already learned: B. 28; 36, including all the Paradigms: G. 47–49; H. All of 61.

62. Rules of Gender. A. & G. 65, a–c: A. & S. 118: B. 43: G. 39; 43; 46; 49; 58, 1, 2: H. 99; 105; 111.

VOCABULARY.

corpus,	corporis, n.	body.
crūs,	crūris, n.	leg.
flōs,	flōris, m.	flower.
frīgus,	frīgoris, n.	cold, frost.
fūnus,	fūneris, n.	funeral procession.
genus,	generis, n.	kind.
iūs,	iūris, n.	right, law.
mōs,	mōris, m.	custom, manner.
onus,	oneris, n.	load, burden.
opus,	operis, n.	work.
scelus,	sceleris, n.	crime, guilt.
tempus,	temporis, n.	time.
volnus,	volneris, n.	wound.

Decline each noun, name its Stem, form its Nominative, and give its Rule of Gender.¹

1. Iūs² bellī; iūra populī Rōmānī. 2. Genus proeli;³ multa genera fūnerum. 3. Tempore⁴ patrum; tempora et mōrēs. 4. Volnera militum. 5. Flōrēs pulchrī.⁵ 6. Propter frīgora. 7. In⁶ reliquum tempus. 8. Mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī. 9. Militēs multa volnera accēpērunt (*have received*). 10. Scelera virōrum sunt multa. 11. Crūra equī sunt māgna. 12. Corpus viri est parvum. 13. Genera flōrum sunt multa. 14. Nūl-

lum⁷ onus aliud. 15. Nulla onera alia. 16. Onera multa et māgna. 17. Facta⁹ mala⁸ scelera⁹ appellāmus. 18. Rēx iūra et mōrēs virīs¹⁰ dabat.¹¹ 19. Multa genera frūmentī importābimus. 20. Dīcit Rōmānōs multa genera frūmentī importāre.¹²

Notes and Questions.

¹ All Exercises are to be pronounced and translated, whether the direction "pronounce ; translate," is given or not.

² Which cases of *Neuter* nouns are alike in form ? What is the Plural Ending of these cases ?

³ See 17.

⁴ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁵ What is the stem of *pulchri* ? (23)

⁶ in, *fo*

⁷ Name the adjectives with Genitive in *-ius* and Dative in *-i*. (24)

⁸ *mala* modifies *facta*.

⁹ See 60.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ What does the Imperfect Tense denote ? (36)

¹² See LN. XVII.

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

63. A. & G. 51, *c*; 52; 53, *a-c*; 54; 55, *a-e*: A. & S. 108, *a, b*; 109, *a*: B. 37; 38, 2, 3; 39; 40, 1, *a-e*: G. 56-58: H. 62, 1, 2; 63, 1; 64. 1; 65, 1-3.

VOCABULARY.

animal, animālis, n.

animal.

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

burn.

finis, finis, m.

limit; pl. territory.

Garumna, -ae, f.

the Garonne (a river of Gaul).

ignis, ignis, m.

fire.

Iūra, -ae, m.

the Jura (a mountain range).

mare, maris, n.

sea.

mōns, mōntis, m.

mountain.

nāvis, nāvis, f.	<i>ship.</i>
pars, partis, f.	<i>part.</i>
pōns, pōntis, m.	<i>bridge.</i>
Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um,	<i>Pyrenean.</i>
que,¹ conj.	<i>and.</i>
rādx, rādicis, f.	<i>root, foot.</i>
terra, -ae, f.	<i>earth.</i>
urbs, urbis, f.	<i>city.</i>

¹ *que* is appended to the second of the connected words : e. g. *terrā marique*. A word thus appended is called an *enclitic*. It throws the accent on the syllable immediately preceding it. Pronounce, *marique* not *márique*.

Decline each noun, name its Stem, and form its Nominatives.

1. Genera animālium multa sunt. 2. Rōmānī terrā marique¹ pūgnābunt. 3. Virōs ignī² cremant. 4. Inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum³ Rhodanus fluit (*flows*). 5. Helvētiī per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās⁴ copiās trādūxerant (*had led across*). 6. Mōns Iūra finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit (*separates*). 7. Ex oppidō Genāvā pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet (*extends*). 8. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs mōntēs pertinet. 9. Pars Sēquanōrum ad rādicēs mōntis fugit (*flees*). 10. Rōmānī suam⁴ urbem Rōmam appellāvērunt. 11. Nāvēs multae et māgnae in marī sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The Rhine flows through the territory of the Germans. 2. Many animals are in the mountains. 3. Men will burn the town with fire. 4. He says (that) men will burn the town with fire. 5. We fight on land and sea. 6. The river flows from the mountains into the sea. 7. The province of Aquitania extends to the mountains.

Notes and Questions

¹ A. & G. 156, *a*: A. & S. 562 (2): B. 341, 2, *a*: G. 475; 476; 477: H. 554, I., 2.

² See 54.

³ What does *Allobrogum* modify?

⁴ See LN. XXII., NOTE 5.



LESSON XXV.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

64. A. & G. 176, *a*, *b*; 183; 185; 186, *b*: A. & S. 327-329; 334: B. 167; 168; 233, 1, 2; 234: G. 211: H. 362; 438, 2.

VOCABULARY.

Arar, Araris, acc. Ararim, m.	<i>the Saône, pronounced Sône.</i>
Divicō, ōnis, m.	<i>Divico.</i>
civitas, civitatis, f.	<i>state.</i>
collis, collis, m.	<i>hill.</i>
dux, ducis, m. and f.	<i>leader, guide.</i>
homō, ¹ hominis, m. and f.	<i>man.</i>
hostis, hostis, m. and f.	<i>enemy.</i>
legiō, legiōnis, f.	<i>legion.</i>
mors, mortis, f.	<i>death.</i>
nōn, adv.	<i>not.</i>
nubes, nūbis, f.	<i>cloud.</i>
potestas, potestatis, f.	<i>power.</i>
post, prep. w. acc.	<i>after.</i>
rūpēs, rūpis, f.	<i>rock, cliff.</i>
testis, testis, m. and f.	<i>witness.</i>
turris, turris, f.	<i>tower.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze; parse.

1. Oppidum est māgnū.²
2. Hominēs fuērunt aegrī.
3. Putat suam sorōrem esse pulchram.³
4. Sēquanī sōlī

erant liberī. 5. Rūpēs in⁴ colle est māgna. 6. Nūbēs erant circum turrīm. 7. Post mortem imperātōris militēs nōn pūgnābunt. 8. In potestāte hostium sumus. 9. Divicō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. 10. Virī multī et bonī sunt in cīvitāte. 11. Divicō dux Helvētiōrum fuerit. 12. Lēgātiōnis Divicō princeps fuit. 13. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est Genāva. 14. Pōpulus⁵ Rōmānus est testis. 15. Erat in Galliā legiō ūna. 16. Pars citrā flūmen Ararim⁶ reliqua est. 17. Flūmen⁷ est Arar quod (*which*) per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit (*flows*). 18. Mōns Iūra⁸ est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. 19. Propter frigora frūmenta⁹ in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. 20. Aeduī Sēquanīs¹⁰ obsidēs dedērunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *homō* means a *human being*, man or woman; *vir* means *man*, *hero*, never woman.

² *oppidum est māgnū* may be rendered *the town is large*; *it is a large town*; or *there is a large town*: the word *there* as used in the last rendering has no equivalent in Latin.

³ See LN. XVII. and Examples.

⁴ *in, on.*

⁵ *populus* takes a *Singular verb*; *people*, its English equivalent, usually takes a *Plural verb*.

⁶ What is the rule of gender for *Arar*? (6)

⁷ See 64.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ Translate *frūmenta* as if it were Singular.

¹⁰ See 39.

LESSON XXVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

65. A. & G. 265, a, b: A. & S. 472; 476 (2): B. 272: G. 255, REMARK; 256, 1, 2: H. 196, II., 1-4.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī Liscus sit dux, if Liscus SHOULD BE leader ; or, if Liscus BE leader.*
2. *Sī Liscus esset dux, if Liscus WERE leader.*
3. *Sī Liscus fuerit dux, if Liscus SHOULD HAVE BEEN leader ; or, if Liscus SHOULD BE leader.*
4. *Sī Liscus fuisset dux, if Liscus HAD BEEN leader.*
5. *Sīmus ducēs, LET US BE leaders.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>cupiditās, -ātis, f.</i>	<i>desire.</i>
<i>Liscus, -ī, m.</i>	<i>Liscus.</i>
<i>multitūdō, -īnis, f.</i>	<i>multitude.</i>
<i>ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.</i>	<i>speech, oration.</i>
<i>sī, conj.</i>	<i>if.</i>
<i>vēctigal, -ālis, n.</i>	<i>tax, revenue.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each Subjunctive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. *Sī² Caesar sit³ cōsul.⁴*
2. *Sī Caesar esset cōsul.*
3. *Sī Caesar fuerit cōsul.*
4. *Sī Caesar fuisset cōsul.*
5. *Sīmus cōsulēs.*
6. *Sī frūmentum esset mātūrum.*
7. *Sī propter frigora frūmentum in agrīs sit nōn⁵ mātūrum.*
8. *Sī vēctigālia fuissent mājna.*
9. *Sī vēctigālia essent parva.*
10. *Sī Divicō princeps lēgatiōnis fuisset.*
11. *Sī nōn⁵ bonus sīs.*
12. *Sī ōrātiōnēs Caesaris fuissent multae.*
13. *Sī multitūdō militum sit mājna.*
14. *Sī cupiditās rēgnī esset mājna.*
15. *Sī rēx fuissēs.*
16. *Militēs sīmus.*
17. *Sī mīles essem.*
18. *Sī sīs imperātor.*

Write in Latin.

1. If Ariovistus should be king.
2. If Ariovistus were king.
3. If Ariovistus had been king.
4. Let us be kings.
5. Let us be good.
6. If the mountain were large.
7. If the boys had been bad.
8. If we were not

free. 9. If the furthest town had been Geneva. 10. If the corn had not been ripe. 11. If Divitiacus were leader of the Helvetii. 12. If the danger had been great.

Notes.

¹ For the Synopsis of the Subjunctive, give the First Person Singular of each tense: e. g. *sim, essem, fuerim, fuisset*.

² *si* is a *conditional conjunction*; the sentence which it introduces is a *conditional sentence*.

³ Before translating the sentences observe carefully how each tense of the Subjunctive is rendered in the **EXAMPLES**.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ A. & G. 207: A. & S. 74 (5): G. 439, 1, 2: H. 551. What does *nōn* modify



LESSON XXVII.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM.—DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

66. Compounds of sum. A. & G. 137, a: A. & S. 215, d: B. 125; 126: G. 117; 118: H. 289; 290, I., III.

67. Dative with Compounds. A. & G. 228: A. & S. 377 (1): B. 187, III.: G. 347: H. 386.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Pauci*¹ *superfuērunt*, *few survived*.
2. *Dux suis militibus* (67) *aderat*, *the leader WAS ASSISTING his soldiers*.
3. *Caesar prōvinciae* (67) *præfuit*, *Caesar RULED OVER the province*.
4. *Si Liscus multis*¹ *prōdesset*, *if Liscus WERE USEFUL to many*.
5. *Si cōsiliū dēfuisset*, *if counsel HAD BEEN WANTING*.
6. *Titus legiōni* (67) *præerat*, *Titus WAS IN COMMAND OF the legion*.

VOCABULARY.

ab-sum,	ab-esse,	ab-fui,	<i>be away, be absent, be distant.</i>
ad-sum,	ad-esse,	ad-fui,	<i>be present, assist.</i>
dē-sum,	de-esse,	dē-fui,	<i>be wanting.</i>
hūmānitās, -ātis, f.			<i>refinement, humanity.</i>
longissimē, adv.			<i>very far.</i>
pauci, ¹ -ae, -a,			<i>few.</i>
prae-sum,	prae-esse,	prae-fui,	<i>be over, rule over, be in command of.</i>
prō-sum,	prōd-esse,	prō-fui,	<i>be for, be useful.</i>
super-sum,	super-esse,	super-fui,	<i>be over, survive.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Multī¹ superfuērunt. 2. Multī² supersumus. 3. Paucī supererimus. 4. Caesar suis militibus³ aderit. 5. Sī Caesar suis militibus nōn adsit.⁴ 6. Cōnsul urbī praeerat. 7. Labiēnus oppidō⁵ Genāvae⁶ praeerit. 8. Cōnsul legiōnī praeest. 9. Sī Caesar multis¹ prōfuisset. 10. Multis prōsimus.⁷ 11. Nōn deest cōsilium. 12. Cōsulēs⁸ dēsumus. 13. Belgae ā hūmānitāte prōvinciae⁹ longissimē¹⁰ absunt. 14. Sī deus¹¹ adsit.

Write in Latin.

1. Many¹ will survive. 2. Few² (of us) survive. 3. The consul will assist his soldiers. 4. If the consul should not assist his soldiers. 5. Let⁷ us assist the soldiers. 6. Labiēnus was in command of the legion. 7. If Labiēnus were¹² in command of the legion. 8. If we consuls⁸ had been wanting.

Notes.

¹ *pauci* and *multi*, like the corresponding English words *few* and *many*, are often used substantively, i. e. as nouns. Parse them, however, as adjectives modifying either the omitted subject of the verb, as in Example 1, or its omitted object, as in Example 4. *Pauci* is rarely used in the Singular.

² *multi* modifies *nōs* (*we*), the omitted subject of *supersumus*; render, *many of us survive*.

³ See 67 and Example 2; translate as if it were an Accusative.

⁴ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 1.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ See 25.

See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 5.

⁸ *cōsulēs* is an appositive to *nōs* (*we*), the omitted subject of *dēsumus*.

⁹ See 40.

¹⁰ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

¹¹ See 20.

¹² See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 2.

LESSON XXVIII.

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

68. Possum. A. & G. 137, *b*: A. & S. 216: B. 126: G. 119: H. 290, II., including *fine print*.

69. Infinitive without Subject Accusative. A. & G. 271: A. & S. 532: B. 327, 1: G. 423: H. 533.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Militēs pūgnāre* (69) *possunt*, the soldiers ARE ABLE to fight, or the soldiers CAN fight.
2. *Militēs pūgnāre poterant*, the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight, or the soldiers COULD fight.
3. *Militēs pūgnāre poterunt*, the soldiers WILL BE ABLE to fight.
4. *Militēs pūgnāre potuerunt*, the soldiers HAVE BEEN ABLE to fight; or the soldiers COULD HAVE fought.
5. *Sī militēs pūgnāre possint*, if the soldiers SHOULD BE ABLE to fight.
6. *Sī militēs pūgnāre possent*, if the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.
7. *Sī militēs pūgnāre potuissent*, if the soldiers HAD BEEN ABLE to fight.
8. *Dicit militēs* (53) *pūgnāre* (69) *potuisse* (52), he says that the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each form of **POSSUM**; parse the Infinitives.²

1. Cōsul oppidum expūgnāre potest.³ 2. Cōsul oppidum expūgnāre poterat. 3. Cōsul oppidum expūgnāre poterit. 4. Cōsul oppidum expūgnāre potuit. 5. Dīcit cōsulem⁴ oppidum expūgnāre potuisse.⁵ 6. Sī cōsul oppidum expūgnāre possit. 7. Sī cōsul oppidum expūgnāre posset. 8. Sī cōsul oppidum expūgnāre potuisset. 9. Populus Rōmānus Cassium⁶ cōsulem⁶ creāre nōn poterit. 10. Titō⁷ filiam meam (*my*) in mātirimōnium dare nōn possum. 11. Cōsulī⁸ adesse poteris. 12. Mīlītēs agrōs hostium vāstāre poterunt. 13. Amīcīs prōdesse possumus. 14. Nēmō (*no one*) sine virtūte bonus esse potest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1; and LN. XXVI., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

³ Observe carefully how each tense of **possum** is translated in the EXAMPLES. What two words unite to form **possum**? Which part of **potis** is used? What does the final **t** become before **s**? What becomes of **f** in the Perfect Tenses?

⁴ See 53.

⁵ See 52.

⁶ See 60.

⁷ See 39.

⁸ See 67.



LESSON XXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **AMŌ**.

70. Learn the Subjunctive Active of amō. A. & G. 118, ACTIVE VOICE, for the Verb-Endings of the Subjunctive; 128: A. & S. 213 (1); 222; 224, 4, b: B. 96; 101: G. 122: H. 205; 243; 245.

Observe that the *Stems* and *Personal Endings* are the same as those of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī urbem occupēmus, if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.*
2. *Sī urbem occupārēmus, if WE OCCUPIED the city; or if WE WERE OCCUPYING the city.*
3. *Sī urbem occupāverimus, if WE SHOULD HAVE OCCUPIED the city; or if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.*
4. *Sī urbem occupāvissēmus, if WE HAD OCCUPIED the city.*
5. *Ut¹ urbem occupēmus, that WE MAY OCCUPY the city.*
6. *Ut urbem occupārēmus, that WE MIGHT OCCUPY the city.*
7. *Urbem occupēmus, LET US OCCUPY the city.*

Conjugate, analyze, and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Sī Sēquanī Helvētiōs iuvent.²*
2. *Sī Rōmānī Germānōs iuvārent.*
3. *Sī rēx Helvētiōs iūverit.*
4. *Sī Aquītānī Sēquanōs iūvissent.*
5. *Ut¹ cōsul Helvētiōs iuvet.*
6. *Ut pater suōs filiōs iuvāret.*
7. *Allobrogēs iuvēmus.*
8. *Puerōs vocēmus.*
9. *Concilium Gallōrum convocēmus.*
10. *Sī Caesarī³ filiam suam in mātīmōnium det.*
11. *Sī cum proximīs civitātibus⁴ pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmēs.*
12. *Ut mīlitēs circum Rōmam hie mārēt.*
13. *Ut populus Ariovistum⁵ rēgem⁵ creāret.*
14. *Ut cōsul oppidum Genāvam⁶ occupāret.*
15. *Ut mīlitēs Rōmānī agrōs Gallōrum vāstent.*
16. *Ut suīs cōpiīs⁷ rēgna conciliāret.*

Write in Latin.

1. If we should love (our) friends.
2. If we loved (our) friends.
3. If we had loved (our) friends.
4. That we may harass the enemy.
5. That we might harass the enemy.
6. Let us love friends.
7. If you should import ripe corn.
8. If you had imported ripe corn.
9. Let us aid the boys.
10. Let us elect the man⁵ senator.⁵

Notes and Questions.

¹ *ut* in this Lesson is a *final conjunction* and is equivalent to *that, in order that*.

² Imitate the Examples in translating the different tenses of the Subjunctive Mood. Define the Subjunctive Mood (65). Define the Indicative Mood (26). What tenses has the Subjunctive? The Indicative? Name the three Stems of *iuvō*.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 16. Name the prepositions which are used with the Ablative.

⁵ See 60.

⁶ See 25.

⁷ *suis cōpīs, with his troops.* See 54.



LESSON XXX.

REVIEW OF *amō*. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Review the entire Active Voice of *amō*.

71. Two Accusatives. A. & G. 239, c, REM.: A. & S. 394 (2).
B. 178, 1: G. 339: H. 374.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesarem sententiam rogāvit, he asked Caesar (his) opinion.*
2. *Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāvit, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.*
3. *Rēx populum sermōnem cēlāvit, the king concealed the conversation from the people.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>cēlō,</i>	<i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>conceal.</i>
<i>com-meō,</i>	<i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>go back and forth.</i>
<i>ex-spectō,</i>	<i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>await, expect.</i>
<i>flāgitō,</i>	<i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>demand.</i>
<i>graviter,</i>	<i>adv.</i>	<i>severely.</i>
<i>mercātor,</i>	<i>-ōris, m.</i>	<i>trader, merchant.</i>
<i>minimē,</i>	<i>adv.</i>	<i>least, by no means.</i>
<i>rogō,</i>	<i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>ask.</i>
<i>saepe,</i>	<i>adv.</i>	<i>often.</i>
<i>sententia,</i>	<i>-ae, f.</i>	<i>opinion.</i>
<i>sermō,</i>	<i>-ōnis, m.</i>	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
<i>volnerō,</i>	<i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>wound.</i>

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Labiēnus militēs³ suōs² exspectābat.⁴ 2. Galli mercātōrēs exspectāvēre.⁵ 3. Titus nūntiat Gallōs mercātōrēs exspectāvisse.⁶ 4. Militēs Sēquanōs graviter volnerāvērunt. 5. Caesar principēs Aeduōrum graviter accūsāt. 6. Dicit Caesarem principēs Aeduōrum graviter accūsāre. 7. Mercātōrēs ad⁷ Belgās commeant.⁷ 8. Mercātōrēs ad Belgās nōn saepe commeant. 9. Minimē⁸ ad Belgās mercātōrēs saepe commeant. 10. Commeāte,⁹ mercātōrēs, ad Belgās. 11. Cōsul Germānōs cōpiās flāgitābit. 12. Cōsul Gallōs frūmentum flāgitat. 13. Sī cōsul Aeduōs cōpiās flāgitet. 14. Caesar cōsulem sententiam rogābit. 15. Dicit Caesarem cōsulem sententiam rogātūrum esse. 16. Titum sermōnem nōn cēlābō. 17. Sī Ariovistum sermōnem cēlāvissem. 18. Ut rēgem sermōnem cēlārem. 19. Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitēmus.¹⁰

Notes and Questions.¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See LN. VI., NOTE 1.³ See LN. IV., NOTE 1.⁴ See LN. XVIII., NOTE 3.⁵ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative ? (43)⁶ See LN. XVII., Examples, Notes on the Examples, and NOTE 3.⁷ *ad — commeant, go-back-and-forth to*, may be rendered *visit*.⁸ *minimē* modifies *saepe*.⁹ See 47.¹⁰ See LN. XXIX., Example 7.

What Stems has each verb and how are they found ? Which tenses denote incomplete and which completed action ? What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice ? Of the Imperative ? What are the Endings of the Infinitives ? Of the Participles ? Which tenses of the Indicative are formed upon the Present Stem ? Which of the Subjunctive ? Which of each are formed upon the Perfect Stem ?

LESSON XXXI.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMŌ**.

72. Definition and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice. A. & G. 111; 116; 118: A. & S. 193; 213 (1): B. 96: G. 214; 114: H. 195, II.; 247, PERSON, PASS., MEANING.

73. Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of **amō**. A. & G. 129: A. & S. 223: B. 102: G. 122: H. 206.

a. Observe that the Active and Passive Voices of these three tenses differ in form only in the Personal Endings: i. e. **amā-mus**, *we love*, **amā-mur**, *we ARE loved*: **amābi-tis**, *you will love*; **amābi-mini**, *you will BE loved*. The only exception is the Second Person Singular of the Future, which, in the Active Voice, has **bi**, and in the Passive, **be**: e. g. **amā-bi-s**, *you will love*; **amā-be-ri-s** or **re**, *you will BE loved*. It is a good practice to write both the Active and Passive Voices side by side on the blackboard, and compare them with each other.

VOCABULARY.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	<i>name, call.</i>
Casticus, -ī, m.	<i>Casticus.</i>
noster, nostra, nostrum,	<i>our.</i>
occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,	<i>hide, conceal.</i>
tantus, -a, -um,	<i>so great.</i>

Conjugate the verbs; name their elements;¹ parse the nouns.

1. Oppida expugnābuntur. 2. Nostrī agrī vāstābuntur.
 3. Homō ignī² cremābitur. 4. Concilium Gallōrum
 convocābātur. 5. Nostrā linguā³ Galli⁴ appellantur.
 6. Ariovistus rēx⁴ atque amīcus appellābātur. 7. Lūcius
 Cassius cōsul⁵ amīcus⁴ appellābitur. 8. Rēx⁴ appellā-
 beris. 9. Divitiacus frāter⁵ Dumnorigis amīcus⁴ populī
 Rōmānī appellābātur. 10. Pater Castici populī Rōmānī
 amīcus appellābātur. 11. In tantā multitudīne fuga
 occultātur. 12. Orātiōne⁶ Liscī Dumnorix Divitiaci

frāter designātur. 13. Dumnorix ab Aeduīs⁶ accūsābātur. 14. Ā Caesare⁶ accūsābiminī.

Write in Latin.

1. The town will be stormed. 2. Our field will be laid waste. 3. The men will be burned with fire. 4. (In) our language they are called Sequani. 5. They will be called kings. 6. He was called a friend of the Roman people. 7. In so great a multitude our flight will be concealed. 8. The brothers of Dumnorix were accused by the Gauls. 9. Dumnorix is described by Caesar's speech.

Notes.

¹ See LN. X., NOTE 3, and LN. XII., NOTE 1.

² See 54.

³ See 54 and LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ See 25.

⁶ With verbs in the Passive Voice *the agent*, i. e. the person by whom anything is done, is expressed by *the Ablative with ā, ab*; *the instrument*, i. e. the thing *by means of which* or *with which* anything is done, by *the Ablative without a preposition*: e. g. *He is overcome BY THE SOLDIER, ā milite superātur*; *he is overcome BY THE soldier's WEAPONS, tēlis militis superātur*.

—•••••—
LESSON XXXII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMŌ (continued).

74. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of amō. A. & G. 118; 129: A. & S. 211; 214; 223: B. 102: G. 122: H. 206.

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcis, f.

com-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

eques, -itis, m.

praetor, -ōris, m.

citadel.

collect.

divulge, report.

horseman, cavalrman.

praetor.

Conjugate and give a Synopsis¹ of each verb in the Indicative Passive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Frūmentum ab Aeduīs² comportātum³ est. 2. Māgna cōpia frūmentī ab Aeduīs comportāta erat. 3. Obsidēs Helvētiīs⁴ datī⁵ erant. 4. Multi obsidēs Helvētiīs ā Sēquanīs datī erant. 5. Nullae⁶ arcēs expūgnātae³ sunt. 6. Nostra cōsilia hostibus⁴ ēnūntiāta³ sunt. 7. Nostra cōsilia hostibus ab Aeduīs ēnūntiāta erant. 8. Caesar ā Rōmānīs praetor⁶ creātus³ est. 9. Praetōrēs⁶ creatī erimus. 10. Nostrī agri vāstātī sunt. 11. Nostra oppida expūgnāta sunt. 12. Tanta multitudō equitum superāta³ est. 13. In tantā multitudīne equitum nostra fuga occultāta est. 14. Cōpiae Caesaris ab Germānīs ūnō proeliō⁷ superātae sunt. 15. Equitēs ā Caesare graviter⁸ accūsātī sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. An abundance of corn has been collected. 2. The citadels will have been stormed. 3. The citadels had been stormed by the Romans.² 4. Caesar's plans have been reported to the Gauls⁴ by the Germans. 5. Cassius had been elected praetor.⁶ 6. A large multitude of cavalrymen has been overcome. 7. The troops of Cassius had been overcome in a single battle.⁷ 8. The troops of Cassius have been overcome by the Germans. 9. We have been severely⁸ censured by the consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

³ Observe that the Participle, like the predicate adjective (64), agrees with the subject of the verb in *gender, number, and case*.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See 34.

⁶ See 64. What was a praetor? (See Gen. Vy.) What was a consul? How often were these officers elected?

⁷ *ūnō proeliō, in a single battle.* See 54.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXXIII.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMŌ** (*continued*).

75. Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of **amō**. A. & G. 116, b; 118; 129 : A. & S. 223, page 114 : B. 102 : G. 122 : H. 247, 3 ; 248 ; 206.

Conjugate the Imperatives; name the Stem and Ending of each verb; parse the Infinitives and Nouns.

1. Accūsāre, accūsāminī.¹ 2. Accūsātor, accūsantor.
3. Iuvāre, iuvātor. 4. Vocāminī, vocantor. 5. Dicit suum frātre^m creātum esse.² 6. Dicit frātre^m Divitiaci dēsīgnātum esse. 7. Dicit mōntem ā Labiēnō occupārī.
8. Negat³ nostrōs agrōs vāstātōs esse. 9. Negat cum proximīs cīvītātibus pācem cōfirmātam esse. 10. Dicit rēgnum in cīvītātē suā occupātum esse. 11. Nūntiat Caesarem creātum esse cōsule^m. 12. Nūntiat Cassium praetōrem creātum esse. 13. Dicit Ariovistum ā Rōmānīs rēgem appellātum esse.

Notes and Questions.

¹ How is the Imperative used ? (47)

² **creātum esse**, *has been elected, or was elected*. See LN. XVII., References to the Grammar, Examples, and Notes on the Examples.

³ **negat**, *he says not ; lit. he denies* : HE SAYS *our fields have NOT been laid waste*.

Upon which Stem are the different tenses of the Indicative Active formed ? Of the Indicative Passive ? The Imperative Active and Passive ? The Infinitives Active and Passive ? The Participles Active and Passive ?

How many Participles has a transitive verb ? A. & G. 109, α : A. & S. 206 : H. 200, IV.. NOTE.

LESSON XXXIV.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMŌ** (*continued*).

76. Learn the Subjunctive Passive of **amŏ**. A. & G. 129 : A. & S. 223 : B. 102 : G. 122 : H. 206.

EXAMPLES.

1. **SI** homŏ cremētur, *if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.*
2. **SI** homŏ cremārētur, *if the man WERE BEING BURNED.*
3. **SI** homŏ cremātus sit, *if the man SHOULD HAVE BEEN BURNED; or if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.*
4. **SI** homŏ cremātus esset, *if the man HAD BEEN BURNED; or if the man WERE BURNED.*
5. **SI** sententiam rogētur, *if HE SHOULD BE ASKED (his) opinion.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. **SI** Caesar sententiam¹ rogātus esset. 2. **SI** sententiam rogātus sim. 3. **SI** sententiam rogārēris. 4. **SI** cremātī essēmus. 5. **SI** Ariovistus rēx² creatus esset. 6. **SI** miles volnerētur. 7. **SI** nōn volnerātus essēs. 8. **SI** Ariovistus amīcus populī Rōmānī appellārētur. 9. **SI** obsidēs Rōmānīs³ ā Gallīs⁴ nōn dentur. 10. **SI** obsidēs Germānīs ab Helvētiīs nōn datī essent. 11. **SI** cōpia frūmentī importētur. 12. **SI** cōpia frūmentī nōn importāta esset. 13. **SI** Divitiacus ā populō Rōmānō rēx appellātus esset. 14. **SI** rēx atque amīcus ab Helvētiīs appellārēris. 15. **SI** sententiam rogātī essēmus. 16. **SI** sententiam rogātī sītis. 17. **SI** rēgēs creatī essētis. 18. **SI** cōsulēs creatī essēmus.

Write in Latin.

1. If I should be asked (my) opinion. 2. If you were asked (your) opinion. 3. If you had been burned. 4. If Cassius had been elected consul. 5. If Cassius had not

been called a friend of the Gauls. 6. If hostages should be given to the Germans by the consul. 7. If the soldiers had not been wounded. 8. If we had not been wounded. 9. If an abundance of corn were being imported. 10. If you should be elected consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 71.² See 64.³ See 39.

⁴ Which prepositions are used with the Ablative? (16) How is the agent of a verb in the Passive Voice expressed in Latin? (LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.) How is the instrument expressed? What is meant by the agent? By the instrument?



LESSON XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

77. Definition. A. & G. 135 : A. & S. 195 : B. 112 : G. 220 : H. 195, II. 2.

78. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the First Conjugation. A. & G. page 106, *mīror* : A. & S. 223, *mīror* : B. 113, *mīror* : G. 128, *hortor* : H. 231 ; 232.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cōnor</i> ,	<i>-ārī</i> ,	<i>-ātus sum</i> , ¹	<i>attempt, try.</i>
<i>glōrior</i> ,	<i>-ārī</i> ,	<i>-ātus sum</i> ,	<i>glory, boast.</i>
<i>hortor</i> ,	<i>-ārī</i> ,	<i>-ātus sum</i> ,	<i>exhort, urge.</i>
<i>laetor</i> ,	<i>-ārī</i> ,	<i>-ātus sum</i> ,	<i>rejoice, exult.</i>
<i>mīror</i> ,	<i>-ārī</i> ,	<i>-ātus sum</i> ,	<i>admire, wonder at.</i>
<i>moror</i> ,	<i>-ārī</i> ,	<i>-ātus sum</i> ,	<i>tarry, delay.</i>
<i>vagor</i> ,	<i>-ārī</i> ,	<i>-ātus sum</i> ,	<i>wander about.</i>
<i>populor</i> ,	<i>-ārī</i> ,	<i>-ātus sum</i> ,	<i>ravage, lay waste.</i>

¹ The principal parts of a deponent verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative* ; e. g. *cōnor*, *cōnārī*, *cōnātus sum*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb.

1. Cōnāmur, cōnābāmur, cōnābimur. 2. Glōriātus sum, glōriātus eram, glōriātus erō. 3. Sī hortētur, sī hortārētur. 4. Sī hortātus sīs, sī hortātus essēs. 5. Laetāre, laetāmīni, laetēmur.² 6. Dicit Caesarem laetātum esse. 7. Mīrārī³ nōn possumus. 8. Vagārī³ cōnēmur.² 9. Vagārī nōn poterimus. 10. Caesar ad⁴ Rōmam morātus est. 11. Helvētīi agrōs Aeduōrum populābantur.

Write in Latin.

1. You are exhorting, you were exhorting, you will exhort. 2. You tarried in the vicinity of Rome; you had tarried; you will have tarried. 3. If he should tarry, if he tarried. 4. If he had tarried near Rome. 5. Let us tarry in the vicinity of Geneva. 6. They can⁵ not rejoice. 7. They could⁵ not rejoice. 8. Let us try² to rejoice.

Notes.

¹ A complete synopsis of cōnor, for example, is as follows: *Indicative*, cōnor, cōnābar, cōnābor, cōnātus sum, cōnātus eram, cōnātus erō; *Subjunctive*, cōner, cōnārer, cōnātus sim, cōnātus essem; *Imperative*, cōnāre, cōnātor; *Infinitives*, cōnārī, cōnātus esse, cōnātūrus esse; *Participles*, cōnāns, cōnandus, cōnātus, cōnātūrus; *Gerunds*, cōnāndī; *Supines*, cōnātum, cōnātū.

² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

³ See 69.

⁴ ad with the name of a town may often be rendered *near*, in the vicinity of.

⁵ Can and could in these and similar sentences are equivalent to *are able*, *were able*; translate them, therefore, by the proper tense of the Indicative of possum, and the principal verb by the Present Infinitive.

LESSON XXXVI.*

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

79. Ablative of Cause. A. & G. 245 : A. & S. 404 : B. 219 : G. 408 : H. 413 ; 416.

80. Complex and Compound Sentences. A. & G. 180, a-f : A. & S. 311-314, a : B. 164 ; 165 : G. 472, 1-4 : H. 348 ; 349.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Puerī equīs* ¹ (79) *laetantur*, *boys rejoice* IN HORSES.
2. *Helvētīī suā victōriā* ¹ (79) *glōriābantur*, *the Helvetii were boasting* BECAUSE OF *their* VICTORY ; or *the Helvetii were glorying* IN *their* VICTORY.
3. *Orgetorix Casticum hortātur ut rēgnum occupet*,² *Orgetorix urges Casticus to seize the royal power.*
4. *Miles nōn laetētur, sī volnerētur*,³ *the soldier would not rejoice, if he should be wounded.*
5. *Sī multī volnerātī essent, nōn laetātī essēmus*, *if many had been wounded, we should not have rejoiced.*
6. *Ariovistus fuit rēx et Caesar fuit cōsul*,⁴ *Ariovistus was king and Caesar was consul.*

Analyze the sentences and parse.

1. *Imperātor militibus bonīs laetātur.* 2. *Rōmānī suā victōriā nōn glōriābantur.* 3. *Sēquanī victōriā suā nōn glōriābantur.* 4. *Negat* ⁵ *Sēquanōs victōriā glōriātūrōs esse.* 5. *Militēs hortābimur ut agrōs populentur.* 6. *Imperātor militēs suōs hortātus est* ⁶ *ut agrōs Gallōrum populentur.* 7. *Dumnorigem hortābor ut rēgnum in* ⁷ *suā cīvitāte occupet.* 8. *Sī ignī* ⁸ *cremer, nōn laetēris.* 9. *Sī Cassius praetor* ⁹ *creātus esset, laetātus essem.* 10. *Sī Caesar sermōnem* ¹⁰ *militēs* ¹⁰ *cēlet, laeter.* 11. *Sī dux*

* NOTE TO TEACHER. — The Lesson from Eutropius on page 171 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

militibus¹¹ adesse¹² possit, laetentur. 12. Hortēmur¹³ Helvētiōs ut cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiā cōfirment. 13. Si Caesar multōs obsidēs dedisset hostibus,¹⁴ hostēs laetātī essent. 14. Puer erat malus et puella erat bona. 15. Cōsul abest et praetor est aeger.⁹

Notes.

¹ In Examples 1 and 2 *equis* and *victōriā* are the cause of the rejoicing and boasting, and hence are in the Ablative, in accordance with the rule referred to in 79.

² Example 3 is a *complex sentence*, because it is made up of a *principal clause*, *Orgetorix Casticum hortatur*, and a *subordinate clause*, *ut rēgnum occupet*. Observe that *ut occupet* is rendered by the Infinitive *to seize*; lit. *that he may seize*.

³ Example 4 is a *complex sentence*; *principal clause*, *mīles nōn laetatur*; *subordinate clause*, *si vulneretur*; *si* and *ut* are *subordinate conjunctions*; hence the clauses which they introduce are subordinate clauses.

⁴ Example 6 is a *compound sentence*, because it is made up of clauses which are independent of each other. Such clauses are called *coördinate clauses*; and the conjunctions which connect them, *coördinate conjunctions*.

⁵ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ *hortatus est*, has urged.

⁷ See LN. XIII., NOTE 5. Which is this?

⁸ See 54.

¹² See 69.

⁹ See 64.

¹³ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁰ See 71.

¹⁴ See 39.

¹¹ See 67



LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION.

81. A. & G. 84, *levis*, ācer, b, *Case-Forms*: A. & S. 148-150; 152; 155 (1), (2): B. 68, ācer; 69, *fortis*: G. 77; 78: H. 152; 153; 154, *tristis*.

VOCABULARY.

alacer, ¹ -cris, -cre,	<i>lively, eager.</i>
brevis, ² -e,	<i>short, brief.</i>
celer, ¹ celeris, celere,	<i>swift.</i>

difficilis , ² -e,	<i>difficult, impracticable.</i>
equester , ¹ -tris, -tre,	<i>of cavalry.</i>
facilis , ² -e,	<i>easy, practicable.</i>
familia , -ae, f.	<i>household, family.</i>
fortis , ² -e,	<i>brave, courageous, strong.</i>
iter , itineris, n.	<i>journey, route, march.</i>
iūdicium , -ī, n.	<i>trial.</i>
omnis , ² -e,	<i>all, every.</i>
tristis , ² -e,	<i>sad.</i>

¹ Declined like *ācer*.

² Declined like *levis*, *mītis*, *facilis*, *tristis*.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ex omnī¹ Galliā. 2. Cum omnibus cōpiīs. 3. Per omnēs urbēs. 4. Per tōtam² urbem. 5. Equī sunt celerēs.³ 6. Negat⁴ equōs esse celerēs. 7. Sī equitēs fuissent celerēs, rēx laetātus esset.⁵ 8. Tempus est breve. 9. Helvētīi oppida sua omnia incendunt (*burn*). 10. Fuit proelium equestre. 11. Dicit futūrum esse proelium equestre. 12. Sēquanī fuērunt tristēs. 13. Iter¹¹ erat difficile. 14. Sī iter sit facile, laeter.⁶ 15. Putō iter esse facile. 16. Titus Labiēnus lēgātus⁷ suōs milītēs hortātur ut⁸ fortēs sint.⁸ 17. Orgētorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam coēgit (*brought*). 18. Orgētorix Helvētīōs hortātus est¹² ut⁹ dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent.⁹ 19. Virīs¹⁰ fortibus laetor.

Notes.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 1.

² See 24.

³ See 64.

⁴ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁶ See LN. XXVI., Ex. 1 and LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁷ See 25.

⁸ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

⁹ ut — *exirent, to go out.*

¹⁰ See 79.

¹¹ See A. & G. 60, c: A. & S. 110 (4): B. 42, 1: G. 44, 5.

¹² hortātus est: *urged.*

LESSON XXXVIII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

82. A. & G. 85, *a, b*; 87, *a, c*: A. & S. 154; 155 (3): B. 70,
except *plūs*, 1, 3: G. 82; 83, REMARK: H. *all of* 155-158.

VOCABULARY.

<i>audāx, -ācis,</i>	<i>bold, audacious.</i>
<i>condictō, -ōnis, f.</i>	<i>condition.</i>
<i>contumēlia, -ae, f.</i>	<i>insult.</i>
<i>dīves, -ītis,</i>	<i>rich.</i>
<i>fēlix, -īcis,</i>	<i>happy.</i>
<i>flēns, -entis,</i>	<i>weeping.</i>
<i>implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>beseech, implore.</i>
<i>iniūria, -ae, f.</i>	<i>injury.</i>
<i>muller, -eris, f.</i>	<i>woman.</i>
<i>oriēns, -entis,</i>	<i>rising.</i>
<i>pār, paris,</i>	<i>equal.</i>
<i>prīnceps, -ipis,</i>	<i>first, chief.</i>
<i>recēns, -entis,</i>	<i>recent.</i>
<i>sōl, sōlis, m.</i>	<i>sun.</i>
<i>spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i>	<i>look, front.</i>
<i>vetus, -eris,</i>	<i>old, ancient.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Veterēs causae. 2. Vetus urbs¹ est Rōma. 3. Memoria veteris contumēliae. 4. In parem condiciōnem servitūtis. 5. Recentium iniūriarum memoria. 6. Mulierēs erant fēlicēs. 7. Mulierēs flentēs Caesarem implōrābant. 8. Helvētiī flentēs pācem petiērunt (*sought*). 9. Hortēmur² militēs ut³ alacrēs et audacēs sint.² 10. Belgae spectant in⁴ orientem sōlem.⁵ 11. Lēgatiōnis prīncipem⁶ locum⁷ obtinēbant (*they held*). 12. Rōmānī dīvitēs fuērunt. 13. Germānī nōn parēs sunt nostrīs militibus.⁸

Write in Latin.

1. There⁹ will be a battle of cavalry. 2. Our soldiers are brave. 3. Let us exhort our soldiers to be brave. 4. Geneva is an old town. 5. All¹⁰ are not happy. 6. Our leaders will be bold. 7. All cannot be¹¹ rich. 8. Weeping women will implore the consul. 9. Gauls are not equal to our cavalrymen.

Notes.

¹ See 64.² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

³ How is the Subjunctive with *ut* to be translated after verbs signifying *ask, command, exhort, persuade, please, strive, urge*? **ANSW.** By the Present Infinitive. See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

⁴ *in, towards.*⁵ See H. 60.⁶ *principem* is here used as an adjective; it is often a noun.⁷ How is *locus* declined in the Plural? See VY., LN. VIII.⁸ *militibus* is a *Dative*.⁹ See LN. XXV., NOTE 2, *last part*.¹⁰ *omnēs*, like the English *all*, is often used substantively.¹¹ *cannot be, esse nōn possunt.*

LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. A. & G. 89, *a*: A. & S. 163–166: B. 71, 1–3: G. 86; 87, 1: H. 160–162; 163, 1.

84. *Declension of Comparatives.* A. & G. 86, *a*: A. & S. 152, *mitior*: B. 69, *fortior*: G. 89: H. 154, *tristior*, NOTE 1.

VOCABULARY.

*altus, -a, -um,**high, deep.**fōrtūna, -ae, f.**fortune.**gravis, -e,**heavy, grievous.**lātus, -a, -um,**broad, wide.*

longē, adv.	<i>by far.</i>
miser, misera, miserum,	<i>wretched, pitiable.</i>
nōbills, -e,	<i>well-known, noble</i>
potēns, -entis,	<i>powerful.</i>
quam, adv.	<i>than.</i>
ūtilis, -e,	<i>useful.</i>

Compare and decline the adjectives.

1. Iūra est mōns¹ altissimus.² 2. Caesar dīcit Iūram esse mōntem altissimum. 3. Rhēnus est flūmen lātissimum et altissimum. 4. Hominī³ nōbilissimō ac⁶ potentissimō aderam. 5. Omnium⁴ fortissimī sunt Belgae. 6. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus et dītissimus¹⁰ fuit Orgētorix. 7. Per trēs (*three*) potentissimōs populōs tōtūus Galliae. 8. Nostrae filiae pulcherrimae sunt. 9. Militēs hortēmur ut fortiōrēs sint.⁵ 10. Sī tempus fuisset brevius, nōn laetātus essem. 11. Militēs fuērunt Caesarī ūtilissimī. 12. Dīcit esse miseriōrem graviōremque⁷ fortūnam⁸ Sēquanōrum quam⁹ reliquōrum Gallōrum.

Write in Latin.

1. The bravest soldiers. 2. The most beautiful women. 3. The broadest rivers. 4. The highest mountains. 5. Divitiacus was the noblest of all. 6. Friends are most useful to a man. 7. Caesar says (that) the Rhine is a very deep river. 8. The fortune of the Gauls was more grievous than (that) of the Germans. 9. Let us urge the boys to be very brave.

Notes.

¹ What is the gender of mōns? Of Iūra?

² *Superlatives* may sometimes be rendered by the *positive* with *very*: e. g. mōns altissimus, a very high mountain. They are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

³ 67.

⁴ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See LN. XXI., NOTE 1.

⁷ What is the difference in force of *et*, *que*, and *atque*? See LN. XXIV., NOTE 1. What are appended words called? See VY., LN. XXIV., NOTE on *que*.

⁸ *fortūnam* is subject of *esse*.

⁹ When *quam* signifying *than* is immediately followed by a Genitive, supply in translation *that*: e. g. *quam Rōmānōrum*, *than THAT of the Romans*.

¹⁰ See General Vocabulary under *dives* and *dis*.



LESSON XL.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*).

85. A. & G. 89, *b-e*; 90; 91, *a, b*: A. & S. 167-170 (1), (2); 173: B. 71, 2, 4; 72; 73, 1, 2; 74; 2: G. 87, 3, 4, 6-8: H. 163, 2, 3; 165; 166; 169, 1, 2; 170.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, -ium, f.	<i>the Alps.</i>
citerior, citerius,	<i>hither.</i>
extrā, prep. w. acc.	<i>without, beyond.</i>
inferior, inferius,	<i>lower.</i>
primus, a, um,	<i>first.</i>
Segūsiānī, -ōrum, m.	<i>the Segusiani.</i>
Sēquanus, -a, -um,	<i>of the Sequani.</i>
superior, superius,	<i>higher, upper.</i>
ūterior, ūterius,	<i>farther.</i>

Translate and parse.

1. Māior¹ multitudō Germānōrum² Rhēnum trānsibat (*was crossing*). 2. Carrōrum² māximus numerus. 3. Cum māximō militum² numerō. 4. Belgae pertinent (*extend*) ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī. 5. Gallī loca superiōra occupant. 6. Labiēnus summum mōntem³ occupāvit. 7. Summus mōns ā Labiēnō⁴ occupātus est. 8. Negat summum mōntem ā Labiēnō occupātum esse.

9. Militēs hortābimur ut summum mōntem occupent.
 10. Si Labiēnus summum mōntem occupet, Caesar sit⁶ fēlicissimus. 11. Iter per prōvinciam est facilius.⁶
 12. Ager Sēquanus erat optimus⁷ tōtius Galliae.
 13. Caesar in Galliam ūteriōrem per Alpēs contendit (*hastens*). 14. Citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppidum.
 15. Segūsiānī sunt extrā prōvinciam primī.

Write in Latin.

1. A very large number of horses. 2. A larger number of cavalrymen. 3. To the upper part of the Rhone. 4. The soldiers will occupy the top of the mountain. 5. The top of the mountain will be occupied by the soldiers. 6. The route through our province is most practicable. 7. I think (that) the route through the Alps is by far the most practicable. 8. Let us occupy the top of the mountain.

Notes.

¹ In parsing adjectives hereafter give their comparison, if they can be compared.

² Notice the different positions of the Genitive; what is the difference in force? See LN. III., NOTE 3.

³ *summum mōntem, the top of the mountain.*

⁴ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ *sit, would be.*

⁶ Name the adjectives which form their Superlatives like *facilia*.

⁷ *optimus, sc. ager.*



LESSON XLI.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

86. Dative with Adjectives. A. & G. 234, a : A. & S. 388 ; 389 : B. 192, 1, 2 : G. 359 : H. 391, I.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Belgae sunt proximī Germānis, the Belgae are nearest TO THE GERMANS.*
2. *Castris idōneus locus est, the place is suitable FOR A CAMP.*
3. *Deō similis est, he is like A GOD.*

VOCABULARY.

aetās, -ātis, f.	age.
amicus, -a, -um,	friendly.
commūnis, -e,	common.
idōneus, -a, -um,	fit, suitable.
inimicus, -a, -um,	unfriendly, hostile.
patria, -ae, f.	native land, fatherland.
periculōsus, -a, -um,	dangerous.
similis, -e,	like, similar.
solum, -ī, n.	ground, soil.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aquitānī sunt proximī prōvinciae. 2. Aquitānī sunt propiōrēs prōvinciae quam Ūliae. 3. Genāva est oppidum proximum Helvētiōrum finibus. 4. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. 5. Cāstris nōn idōneus omnis locus est. 6. Negat castris idōneum omnem locum esse. 7. Sī castris idōneus locus sit, militēs laetentur.¹ 8. Nōn ego sum idōneus armīs. 9. Sī ego fuisset idōneus armīs, laetātus essem. 10. Dumnorix Helvētiīs erat amicus. 11. Dux inimicior Dumnorigī fuit quam Caesarī. 12. Mātrī puella est similis. 13. Nōn omnis puer est similis patrī. 14. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnis. 15. Patriae solum omnibus cārum est. 16. Populō Rōmānō periculōsum est proelium. 17. Omnī urbī lēgēs sunt ūtilēs. 18. Imperātor suōs militēs hortātur ut fortēs sint² et urbī Rōmae ūtilēs.

Write in Latin.

1. He says (that) the Aquitani are nearest to the province. 2. Ocelum was the furthestmost town of the hither province and nearest to the Alps. 3. If the place had been suitable for a camp, we should have rejoiced.³ 4. Let us urge the soldiers to be² useful to (their) fatherland. 5. The lieutenant was most friendly to the soldiers. 6. The daughter is more like (her) father than (her) mother. 7. I do⁴ not think (that) the battle will be dangerous to the city.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4. What kind of a sentence is this? (*so*)

² See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁴ See LN. X., NOTE 4.

**LESSON XLII.****ADVERBS.**

87. Definition. A. & G. 25, *f*: A. & S. 74 (5): G. 16, 5: H. 303.

88. Derivation. A. & G. 148, *a, b, d*: A. & S. 174, *b, c*: B. 76, 1; 77, 3; 140: G. 91, 1, *b-d*; 2, *a-d*; 92, 1, 2: H. 304, I.-IV

89. Classification. A. & G. 149, *a-g*: B. 140: H. 305, NOTE 2, 1)-4).

90. Comparison. A. & G. 92: A. & S. 175: B. 76, 2; 77, 1: G. 93: H. 306.

91. Syntax. A. & G. 207: A. & S. 557: B. 347, 1: G. 439, 2: H. 551.

VOCABULARY.

ācri ter, adv.	<i>sharply, fiercely.</i>
audāc ter, adv.	<i>boldly, courageously.</i>
celer iter, adv.	<i>quickly, immediately.</i>
facile , adv.	<i>easily, readily.</i>
fort iter, adv.	<i>bravely, valiantly.</i>
grav iter, adv.	<i>heavily, severely.</i>
liberē , adv.	<i>freely, unreservedly.</i>
quā , adv.	<i>where.</i>

Parse the adverbs and adjectives.

1. Belgae fortiter¹ pūgnāvērunt. 2. Si militēs fortius pūgnent, imperātor laetētur. 3. Rōmānī nōn ācrius pūgnābunt quam Gallī.² 4. Germānī Helvētiōs facile³ superābunt. 5. Gallī ā Caesare nōn facillimē superātī sunt. 6. Nūntiat Gallōs ā Caesare nōn facillimē superātōs esse. 7. Caesar Dumnorigem gravissimē accūsāvit. 8. Caesar celeriter concilium dīmittit (*dismisses*). 9. Liscus dīcit liberius⁴ atque⁵ audācius. 10. Quā⁶ minima altitūdō flūminis erat. 11. Iūmentōrum et carōrum quam⁷ māximum numerum coēmere⁸ (*to purchase*). 12. Hostēs quam fortissimē pūgnābant. 13. Helvētīi Rōmānīs⁹ quam amīcissimī fuērunt. 14. Solum patriae cīvī quam cārissimum est.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing an adverb.* — **fortiter** is an adverb of manner (*89*); derived from the adjective **fortis** (*88*); compared **fortiter**, **fortius**, **fortissimē** (*90*); of the positive degree and modifies **pūgnāvērunt** (*91*).

² What is the construction of **Gallī**?

³ See *88*.

⁴ **liberē** has no Superlative.

⁵ See LN. XXIV., NOTE 1.

⁶ As a rule only those adverbs are compared which are derived from adjectives.

⁷ **quam** modifying a Superlative *strengthens* it: e. g. **quam māximum**, *as large as possible*; **quam fortissimē**, *as bravely as possible*.

⁸ (..) is the mark of *Diaeresis*; when placed over the second of two vowels which regularly form a diphthong, it shows that they are to be *separated* in pronunciation: e. g. *coëmere* has four syllables: *coemere* would have only three.

⁹ See 86.



LESSON XLIII.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

92. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. 130: A. & S. 222: B. 103: G. 123; 124: H. 207. See 27, 28, 37, 45, 49, 50 of this book.

VOCABULARY.

moneō,	-ēre, -uī, -itum,	advise.
habeō,	-ēre, -uī, -itum,	have.
prohibeō,	-ēre, -uī, -itum,	restrain, keep from.

¹ Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like *moneō*. For the *principal parts* let *-ēre, -uī, -itum* take the place of final *-eō*: e. g. *habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb; name its elements.

1. Monēbātis, monēbitis, monuistis. 2. Sī moneāmus,² sī monērēmus, sī monuissēmus. 3. Monē, monēte, monentō. 4. Monēns, monitūrus. 5. Monēre, monuisse, monitūrus esse. 6. Ut equōs habeāmus.² 7. Ut rēx urbēs multās³ et māgnās habeat. 8. Multa castra habēbimus. 9. Lēgātus multōs militēs habuerit.⁴ 10. Habētō, habētōte.⁶ 11. Habēns, habitūrus. 12. Habēre, habuisse, habitūrus esse. 13. Sī Helvētiōs itinere⁶ prohibeant. 14. Sī Helvētiōs itinere prohibuissent. 15. Helvētiōs itinere prohibeāmus.⁷ 16. Itinere Helvētiōs prohibēre⁸ cōnantur. 17. Itinere hostēs prohibēbimus. 18. Militēs itinere hostēs prohibēre cōnābuntur. 19. Sī itinere militēs prohibuissēmus. 20. Lēgātī nostrōe virōs monuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. You have, you were having, you will have had.
2. If you should have, if you had, if you had had.
3. Have ye, he shall have, they shall have.
4. To restrain, to have restrained, to be about to restrain.
5. If we should keep the soldiers from the town.
6. If we shall have kept the soldiers from the town.
7. Let us keep the enemy from the town.
8. We shall attempt to keep the enemy from the town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 1.² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLES.³ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.⁴ Define the use of the Future Perfect Tense. (42)⁵ Define the use of the Imperative Mood. (47)⁶ *itinere* is an *Ablative of Separation*. A. & G. 243: A. & S. 413: B. 214: G. 390, 1, 2: H. 413; 414.⁷ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.⁸ See 69.

What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? Of the Infinitives and Participles? How are the different Stems of a verb found? (28, 45, 50) What two uses has the Perfect Indicative? (43)

LESSON XLIV.*

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

93. *Accusative of Time*. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 423: B. 181: G. 336: H. 379. This answers the question, *How long?*

VOCABULARY.

dēleō,	-ēre, -ēvī,	-ētum,	destroy.
doceō,	-ēre, -uī,	doctum,	teach.
iubeō,	-ēre, iussī,	iūssum,	command, order.

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER:—The Lesson from Eutropius on page 172 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm,	stay, remain.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtūm,	move, remove.
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, obtentūm,	hold, obtain.
possessio, -ōnis, f.	possession.
vīcus, -ī, m.	village.

Analyze and parse.

1. Germānī multōs vicōs dēlēverant. 2. Aliud¹ iter habēbant nullū. 3. Quam² plūrimās cīvitātēs habēbant. 4. Allobrogēs trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessionēque³ habēbant. 5. Puerōs⁴ litterās⁴ doceāmus. 6. Dicit mātrem⁵ filiās litterās docēre. 7. In Galliā ulteriōre multōs annōs⁶ manēbimus. 8. Caesar senātōrem hortātur ut⁷ in castrīs multōs mēnsēs maneat.⁷ 9. Rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat. 10. Divicō lēgatiōnis locum princīpem obtinēbat. 11. Si imperātor castra moveat, militēs fortius⁸ pūgnent. 12. Castra⁹ movēre¹⁰ celerius nōn potuerunt.¹¹ 13. Itinere¹² Helvētiōs prohibēre nōn poterunt.¹¹ 14. Helvētiī suīs finibus Germānōs prohibēbant. 15. Proximū¹³ iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs est. 16. Sed in summō iugō duās (two) legiōnēs,¹⁴ quās (which) in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat (he had enlisted), et omnia auxilia¹⁴ conlocārī¹⁵ iussit.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Which adjectives have their Genitive in *Ius* and Dative in *I*? (24)

² See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

³ See LN. XXIV., VY., NOTE.

⁴ See 71.

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See 93.

⁷ How is *ut* — *maneat* to be translated? See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ From what adjective is *fortiter* derived?

⁹ What does *castra* signify in the Singular?

¹⁰ See 69.

¹¹ How do *potuerunt* and *poterunt* differ from each other?

¹² See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹³ *proximū*, *shortest*.

¹⁴ *legiōnēs* and *auxilia* are subjects of *conlocārī*. (53)

¹⁵ *conlocārī* (to be stationed) with its subjects is object of *iussit*. (53)

LESSON XLV.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

94. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Second Conjugation.
A. & G. 130: A. & S. 223: B. 104: G. 123; 124: H. 208.

See also 78, a, of this book.

VOCABULARY.

contineō, -ēre, -uī, contentum,	<i>hem in, bound.</i>
(diciō), ¹ -ōnis, f.	<i>dominion, power.</i>
ōceanus, -i, m.	<i>ocean.</i>
rapīna, -ae, f.	<i>plundering.</i>
servitūs, -ūtis, f.	<i>slavery.</i>
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum,	<i>hold, keep.</i>
undique, adv.	<i>on all sides.</i>

¹ Used only in the oblique cases of the Singular.

Give a complete synopsis of each verb and parse.

1. Ūna pars continētur ¹ Garumnā ² flūmine, ³ Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum. 2. Undique locī nātūrā ⁴ Helvētiī continentur. 3. Summus mōns ⁵ ā Titō Labiēnō tenēbātur. 4. Nūntiat summum mōntem ā hostibus tentum esse. 5. Sī summus mōns ā hostibus teneātur, nostrī militēs quam ācerrimē ⁶ pūgnent. 6. Aeduī in servitūte atque in diciōne Germānōrum tentī sunt. 7. Caesar memoriā tenēbat. 8. Hostis ā Caesare rapīnis ⁷ prohibēbātur. 9. Summus mōns ā hostibus tenērī nōn potest. ⁸ 10. Gallī tenērī in servitūte nōn poterant. ⁸ 11. Obsidēs multōs annōs in servitūte tenēbantur. 12. Sī multōs annōs in servitūte tentī essēmus, nōn fēlicēs fuissēmus.

Write in Latin.

1. The top ⁵ of the mountain will be held by Caesar.
2. The top of the mountain could ⁸ not be held by Caesar.

3. He says (that) the top of the mountain was held by the Germans. 4. If Cassius should keep in memory. 5. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country. 6. The Germans will be kept from plundering by the Romans. 7. They were held in slavery many years.⁹

Notes and Questions.

¹ Define the Passive Voice. (72) What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? Name the three Stems of *contineō*. On which Stem are the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive formed?

² See 54.

³ See 25.

⁴ *loqi nātūrā*, by the character of their country.

⁵ *summus mōns*, the top of the mountain; we might expect the highest mountain.

⁶ From *scriter*; from what adjective is *scriter* derived?

⁷ *rapinis*; translate by the Singular; see L.N. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ When *possum* governs a Passive Infinitive render it by *can*, if in the Present Tense; by *could*, if in a Past Tense; e. g. *tenēri potest*, can be held; *tenēri poterat*, could be held.

⁹ See 23.

LESSON XLVI.

DEPONENT VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION.

95. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. 135: A. & S. 223, use *moneor* for model: B. 113, II.: G. 220; 128, 2: H. 231, 1-3; NOTE under 232.

VOCABULARY.

in-tueor, -*ēri*, *in-tuitus sum*,¹ look at.

nē, adv.

not, used with the Subjunctive and Imperative.

nē, conj.

that not; after verbs of fearing, that; used with the Subjunctive.

polliceor, -*ēri*, *pollicitus sum*, promise.

vereor, -*ēri*, *veritus sum*, fear.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Aedui frumentum pollicentur.² 2. Aedui frumentum publicē polliciti erant. 3. Vereor nē Aedui Rōmānīs³ frumentum polliceantur.⁴ 4. Nē⁵ frumentum polliceāmur.⁶ 5. Si Aedui frumentum mātūrum polliciti essent, Caesar fēlix fuisset. 6. Rōmānī nōn hostem verentur sed angustias itineris. 7. Nē Divitiaci animum offenderet (*he should offend*) verēbātur. 8. Nūntiat⁷ Sēquanōs terram intuēri. 9. Negat⁸ Rōmānōs hostem veritōs esse. 10. Sōlem intuēri nōn possumus. 11. Nē sōlem intueāmur. 12. Verēbāmur nē hostēs agrōs nostrōs populārentur. 13. Verēmur nē hostēs agrōs nostrōs populentur. 14. Verēmini nē hostēs agrōs vestrōs populentur. 15. Rōmānīs frumentum nōn polliciti sumus. 16. Rōmānī Helvētiīs obsidēs nōn pollicēbuntur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were exhorting and promising. 2. They have promised ripe corn. 3. He says that they⁹ have promised ripe corn. 4. He fears that the Romans will promise⁴ corn to our enemies.³ 5. Let us not promise corn to the Gauls. 6. Let us not look at the men. 7. Let us not fear the difficulties of the route. 8. I fear the route will be⁴ dangerous.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., VY., 1.

² Define a Deponent Verb. (77) What Participles do Deponent Verbs have? What Infinitives?

³ See 39.

⁴ When the *Present Subjunctive* depends upon a verb of fearing which is in the Present Tense, render it by the *Future Indicative*: nē Aedui polliceantur, *that the Aedui will promise*.

⁵ nē is here an adverb.

⁶ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁷ See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

⁸ they, eōs.

⁹ What is the object of nūntiat?

LESSON XLVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

96. A. & G. 68; 69: A. & S. 126; 127: B. 48; 49; 50: G. 61; 62: H. 116, 1, 2; 118, (1).

97. *Declension of domus.* A. & G. 70, f: A. & S. 130: B. 49, 4: G. 61, 2: H. 119.

VOCABULARY.

adventus, -ūs, m.	arrival, approach.
com-moveō, -ēre, com-mōvī, com-mōtum,	move, disturb.
cōnspectus, -ūs, m.	sight, view.
cornū, -ūs, n.	horn; of an army, wing.
dexter, dextra, dextrum,	right.
domus, -ūs, f.	house; domī, at home.
equitātus, -ūs, m.	cavalry.
exercitus, -ūs, m.	army.
impetus, -ūs, m.	attack.
paene, adv.	almost.
semper, adv.	always.
sustineō, -ēre, -uī, sustentum,	sustain, withstand.

Parse the nouns and verbs.

1. Dē Caesaris adventū.¹ 2. Helvētiī Caesaris adventū² commōtī sunt. 3. In cōnspectū hostium. 4. Omnium³ ex cōnspectū. 5. Paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī⁴ agrī vāstantur. 6. Cum equitātū Helvētiōrum. 7. Māgnū numerum equitātūs semper habēbat. 8. Equitātus sustinēbat hostium impetum. 9. Labiēnus exercitū⁵ Rōmānō praeftuit. 10. Hostēs impetūs militum sustinere nōn potuerunt. 11. Equitātum omnem praemittit (*he sends forward*) quī⁶ impetum hostium sustineat.⁶ 12. Nē hostium adventū commoveāmur. 13. Ā dextrō cornū; ad dextrum cornū. 14. Caesar domī fuit. 15. Sēquanī itinere⁷ exercitum nostrum prohibere cōnantur.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 16. How many declensions are there in Latin, and how distinguished from one another? (8) What is the *Stem-Ending* of each? What are the *Case-Endings* of the Fourth Declension?

² See 79.

³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁴ *nostrī* modifies *exercitūs*.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ *qui* — *sustineat*, to withstand.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

LESSON XLVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

98. A. & G. NOTE; 72; 73; 74, *d*: A. & S. 132, *a*; 133 (2), (3): B. 51; 52, 1, 4; 53: G. 63, REMARKS 1, 2, NOTE 1; 64: H. 120, 1, 2; 122; 123.

VOCABULARY.

<i>com-meātus</i> , -ūs, m.	<i>supplies, provisions.</i>
<i>com-parō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	<i>prepare.</i>
<i>diēs</i> , <i>diēī</i> , m.	<i>day.</i>
<i>fidēs</i> , <i>fideī</i> , f.	<i>faith, pledge, promise.</i>
<i>perniciēs</i> , <i>perniciēī</i> , f.	<i>ruin, destruction.</i>
<i>profectiō</i> , -ōnis, f.	<i>departure.</i>
<i>rēs</i> , <i>reī</i> , f.	<i>thing, affair.</i>
<i>spēs</i> , <i>speī</i> , f.	<i>hope, expectation.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Cum *perniciēī*¹ *exercitūs*. 2. Ad suam *perniciem*.
 3. *Ūnō diē*. 4. *Diem dicunt* (*they appoint*). 5. *Sine spē*. 6. In *meliōrem*² *spem*. 7. *Māgnam* in *spem*.
 8. *Māgnās spē*s habēmus. 9. *Rēs Helvētiūs*³ *ēnūntiāta* est. 10. *Putat rēs Helvētiūs ēnūntiātās esse*. 11. *Omnēs rēs* ad *profectiōnem comparātae* sunt. 12. *Caesar paucōs diēs*⁴ ad⁵ *Vesontiōnem commeātūs causā*⁶ *morātur*.

13. Caesar Gallis fidem dabit. 14. Vereor nē Caesar Helvētiis fidem det.⁷ 15. Si Caesar Germānis fidem det, Rōmānī nōn laetentur. 16. Caesar Divitiacō⁸ māximam fidem habēbat. 17. Germānis parvam habet fidem. 18. Caesarī fidem habeāmus.⁹

Write in Latin.

1. The affair will be reported to the Romans. 2. He says (that) the affair has been reported to the Romans. 3. We had great expectations. 4. We shall prepare all things for the departure. 5. With the ruin of many cities. 6. We shall delay many days near⁵ Rome for the sake of provisions. 7. We fear that the leader will give⁷ a pledge to the Romans. 8. We have the greatest confidence in⁸ the Helvetii. 9. They have very little¹⁰ confidence in the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the Stem of *perniciēs*, *diēs*, *spēs*, *fidēs*? When is the final Stem-Vowel short? What are the Case-Endings of the Fifth Declension? Which nouns are complete in the Plural?

² See 84.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 93.

⁵ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 4.

⁶ See General Vocabulary under *causa*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ *Divitiacō* — *fidem habēbat*, *had* — confidence in *Divitiacus*; lit., *had* confidence to *Divitiacus*. See 39.

⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁰ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.

LESSON XLIX.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

99. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. 131: A. & S. 222 *regō*: B. 105: G. 125: H. 209; 241-248.

a. The Imperative and Present Indicative have a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this connecting vowel is *u* before *n*, elsewhere *i*. The First Person Singular Present Indicative has the termination *ō*; the Second Person Singular Present Imperative, the termination *e*.

b. The Imperfect Indicative has a connecting vowel (*ō*) between the Stem and Tense-Sign; the Present Participle and Present Infinitive, a connecting vowel (*e*) between the Stem and Ending.

c. The Future Indicative has a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this is *a* in the First Singular, *e* in the Third Singular Active and Third Plural, Active and Passive, elsewhere *ō*.

VOCABULARY.

con-tendō,	-ere,	con-tendī,	con-tentum,	<i>hasten, march rapidly.</i>
dī-mittō,	-ere,	dī-misī,	dī-missum,	<i>dismiss.</i>
gerō,	-ere,	gessī,	gestum,	<i>carry, carry on.</i>
mittō,	-ere,	misī,	missum,	<i>send.</i>
tollō,	-ere,	sustulī,	sublātum,	<i>lift, take away.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; name its elements; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Caesar in *Ītaliā* *māgnīs* *itineribus*¹ *contendit*.
2. Caesar *ad* *hostēs* *contendit* *equitātumque* *omnem* *mittit*.²
3. *Caesarem* *hortēmur* *ut* *ad* *hostēs* *contendat*.
4. *Helvētiī* *lēgātōs* *ad* *Caesarem* *mittunt*.
5. *Helvētiī* *exercitum* *Rōmānum* *sub* *iugum*³ *mīsērunt*.
6. *Nūntiat* *Helvētiōs* *exercitum* *Rōmānum* *sub* *iugum* *mīsisse*.
7. *Imperātor* *celeriter* *concilium* *dīmittit*.
8. *Cōnsul* *spem* *fugae* *tollēbat*.
9. *Tolle*, *cōnsul*, *spem* *fugae*.
10. *Belgae* *cum* *Germānīs* *continenter* *bellum* *gessērunt*.
11. *Sī* *omnēs* *rēs* *ad* *profectiōnem* *comparātae* *sint*, *in* *Galliā* *ūlteriōrem* *contendāmus*.
12. *Verēmur* *ut*⁴ *rēx* *cum* *hostibus* *bellum* *gerat*.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. Let us hasten into farther Gaul.
2. Let us urge the lieutenant to hasten into hither Gaul.
3. The

Romans carried on war with the Gauls many years.⁶
 4. The Sequani had sent our army under the yoke.
 5. The king will have taken away the hope of flight.
 6. The king had taken away the hope of flight. 7. He thinks that the king has taken away the hope of flight.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *māgnis itineribus, by long marches. See 54.*

² Name the Stems of *mittō*. What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation? Of the First and Second? What is the sign of the Imperfect Indicative?

³ When was an army "sent under a yoke," and why? See General Vocabulary under *iugum*.

⁴ *ut* after verbs of *fearing* is to be rendered *that not*.

⁵ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁶ What question does "many years" answer? (93)



LESSON L.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE. THIRD CONJUGATION.

100. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation.
 A. & G. 131: A. & S. 223, *regor*: B. 106: G. 125: H. 210.

See also 73, *a*, of this book, observing that in the Third Conjugation the exception is the Second Person Singular of the *Present Indicative* instead of the Future.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum,</i>	<i>surround, encircle.</i>
<i>dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum,</i>	<i>select, choose.</i>
<i>dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum,</i>	<i>say, tell.</i>
<i>dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum,</i>	<i>lead, draw.</i>
<i>vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum,</i>	<i>conquer.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Exercitus Rōmānus ab Helvētiīs sub iugum mīssus est.*¹ 2. *Orgetorix dēligitur.*¹ 3. *Cassius lēgātus*² *dēligētur.* 4. *Vix singulī carrī dūcēbantur.* 5. *Vix singulī carrī per angustias ductī erant.* 6. *Paene tōtum oppidum*

flūmine⁸ cingitur. 7. Nē ab hostibus⁸ vincāmur. 8. Si ab hostibus victi¹ essēmus, victōriā⁴ glōriātī essent.⁵ 9. Si Caesar exercitui⁶ praesit, nōn vincāminī. 10. Nōn imperātor² dēligēris. 11. Carrī per angustias dūcī nōn possunt.⁷ 12. Germānī ā Rōmānīs vincī nōn poterant.⁷ 13. Urbs cingitur; urbs cingētur. 14. Castra vāllō¹⁰ cincta sunt. 15. Si castra vāllō cingantur, nōn vincāmus. 16. Si Caesar imperātor dēligātur, omnēs laetentur.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii had been sent under a yoke. 2. Caesar said (that) the Gauls had been sent under a yoke. 3. The wagons will be drawn with difficulty one by one. 4. Almost the entire town was surrounded by a river.³ 5. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.³ 6. We fear that you will be conquered⁸ by the Germans. 7. As brave soldiers as possible⁹ will be selected. 8. The best (men) have been selected. 9. We fear that our soldiers will be sent under a yoke. 10. You fear that¹¹ Titus will not¹¹ send the enemy under a yoke. 11. We fear that Caesar will not select the bravest soldiers. 12. We shall select as many soldiers as possible. 13. If the general should select the bravest men, all would rejoice. 14. Let us select as brave soldiers as possible.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? (72) What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation, Passive Voice? Of the First and Second Conjugations, Passive Voice? Which verbs have a Passive Voice? *Ans. Transitive Verbs*, i. e. verbs which in the Active Voice take a direct object. (34)

² See 64.⁴ See 79 and Ex. 2.⁶ See 67.⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.¹⁰ See 54.³ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.⁵ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.⁹ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.¹¹ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

LESSON LI.

VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

101. Learn the entire conjugation of **audiō**, Active and Passive.
A. & G. 132 : A. & S. 222 ; 223 : B. 107 ; 108 : G. 127 : H. 211 : 212.

a. The Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative and Future Imperative has the connecting vowel **u** : e. g. audi-**u**-nt, audi-**u**-ntō ; see also 99, b and c.

VOCABULARY.

audiō ,	-īre, -ivī, -itum,	<i>hear.</i>
con-veniō ,	-īre, -vēnī, -ventum,	<i>come together, assemble.</i>
mūniō ,	-īre, -ivī, -itum,	<i>fortify.</i>
per-veniō ,	-īre, -vēnī, -ventum,	<i>come to, arrive.</i>
veniō ,	-īre, vēnī, ventum,	<i>come.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Puerī multās rēs audiunt. 2. Multae rēs ā puerīs audiuntur. 3. Militēs imperātōrem audient. 4. Imperātor ā militibus audiētur. 5. Belgae tōtum oppidum mūnivērunt.¹ 6. Tōtum oppidum ā Belgīs mūnitum est. 7. Sī castra ā militibus mūnīta essent, hostēs nōn vīcissent. 8. Mūniāmus urbem Rōmam. 9. Caesar in Galliam citeriōrem vēnit.² 10. Vēnī, vīdī,³ vīcī.³ 11. Ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniunt. 12. Militēs hortātur ut ad rīpam Rhodanī conveniant. 13. In finēs Gallōrum pervēnērunt, ubi (*where*) propter volnera militum paucōs diēs⁴ mōrātī sunt. 14. Helvētīi in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant⁵ et agrōs populābantur.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers had heard many things. 2. Many things are heard by the soldiers. 3. The ambassador

will be heard. 4. The Romans came into farther Gaul. 5. They fortified Geneva, a walled town. 6. Let us fortify many towns. 7. We came, we saw, we conquered. 8. The bravest soldiers have assembled on the bank of the Rhine.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What other Ending has the Perfect Indicative Active, Third Plural ?
- ² How does *vēnit* differ from *venit* in meaning ?
- ³ *vidi* from *videō* ; *vidi* from *vineō*.
- ⁴ See 23.
- ⁵ How does the Pluperfect Indicative represent the action ? (42)
- ⁶ How does the Imperfect Indicative represent the action ? (36)
- ⁷ How many conjugations are there, and how distinguished from one another ?

 LESSON LII.
THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN *IO*.

102. Learn the entire conjugation, Active and Passive, of *capio*.
 A. & G. 131, page 100 : A. & S. 222 ; 223 : B. 109-111 : G. 126 : H. 217-219.

VOCABULARY.

<i>capio</i> ,	<i>capere</i> ,	<i>cēpi</i> ,	<i>captum</i> ,	<i>take, capture.</i>
<i>cupio</i> ,	<i>cupere</i> ,	<i>cupivi</i> ,	<i>cupitum</i> ,	<i>desire.</i>
<i>facio</i> ,	<i>facere</i> ,	<i>fēci</i> ,	<i>factum</i> ,	<i>make, do ; iter facere, to march.</i>
<i>fodio</i> ,	<i>fodere</i> ,	<i>fōdi</i> ,	<i>fossum</i> ,	<i>dig.</i>
<i>fugio</i> ,	<i>fugere</i> ,	<i>fūgi</i> ,	<i>fugitum</i> ,	<i>flee.</i>
<i>iacio</i> ,	<i>iacere</i> ,	<i>iēcī</i> ,	<i>iactum</i> ,	<i>throw, hurl.</i>
<i>rapio</i> ,	<i>rapere</i> ,	<i>rapui</i> ,	<i>raptum</i> ,	<i>seize, plunder.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Rōmāni multa oppida cēpērunt.* 2. *Multa oppida ā Rōmānis capta sunt.* 3. *Helvēti māgnās possēsiōnēs*

cupient. 4. Māgnae possessiōnēs ab Helvētiis cupientur. 5. Nostri milites tēla in hostēs iaciēbant.¹ 6. Germānī castra Rōmānōrum rapuerunt. 7. Germānī māgnam fossam fōderant. 8. Fossās multās et māgnās fōderimus. 9. Fugite,² milites,³ in urbem. 10. Dux nūntiat hostēs⁴ oppidum captūrōs⁵ esse. 11. Lēgātus dixit oppidum ā milītibz captum esse.⁶ 12. Ūna pars initium ā flūmine Rhodanō capit. 13. Lēgātus verētur nē locus ex interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat.⁷ 14. Helvētīi per prōvinciam nostram iter faciēbant. 15. Helvētīi per agrum Sēquanōrum iter in Aeduōrum finēs facient. 16. Iter faciāmus in finēs Germānōrum. 17. Lēgātus milites hortābātur quō iter celerius⁸ facerent.⁹ 18. Milites iter celerius facere nōn possunt.

Notes.

¹ Change sentences 5, 6, 7 into the Passive form ; compare sentences 3 and 4.

² See 47.

³ Vocative Case.

⁴ See 53.

⁵ Why captūrōs and not captūrus ?

⁶ *captum esse, had been taken.*

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁹ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ *celerius, an adjective, modifying iter.*

LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

103. Learn the entire Third and Fourth Conjugations of Dependent Verbs. A. & G. 135 : A. & S. 223, use *regor* and *audior* for models : B. 113, III., IV. : G. 128, 2 : H. 231, 1-3 ; NOTE under 232.

104. Ablative with certain Deponents. A. & G. 249 : A. & S. 419 : B. 218, 1 : G. 407 : H. 421, I.

VOCABULARY.

mētior,	mētīrī,	mēnsus	sum,	measure, deal out.
nītor,	nītī,	nīsus or nīxus	sum,	strive, endeavor.
orior,	orīrī,	ortus	sum,	rise, begin.
potior,	potīrī,	potitus	sum,	get possession of, obtain.
proficiscor,	proficīscī,	profectus	sum,	set out, depart.
sequor,	sequī,	secūtus	sum,	follow.
ūtor,	ūtī,	ūsus,	sum,	use, make use of.

Conjugate; name the Stems;¹ give synopses; parse.

1. Caesar hostēs sequitur. 2. Caesar paucōs diēs³ morātus² hostēs secūtus est. 3. Liscus cum legiōnibus ē castrīs profectus est. 4. Caesar mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī. 5. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus⁴ oriuntur. 6. Militēs frūmentō nōn ūtentur. 7. Frūmentō ūtī⁵ hominēs nōn poterant. 8. Pāce ūtī nōn possumus.^{*} 9. Impedimentīs castrisque nostrī⁶ potītī sunt. 10. Nītēbantur ut imperiō potīrentur. 11. Nītentur ut⁷ tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiantur.⁷ 12. Gallī nītuntur ut impedimentīs potiantur. 13. Dux virīs⁸ frūmentum mētītur. 14. Liscus militibus frūmentum nōn mēnsus erat. 15. Nītāmur ut tōtīus Ītalīae imperiō potiāmur.

Write in Latin.

1. Liscus will follow the enemy. 2. Our soldiers followed the Gauls. 3. The Gauls were following our army. 4. When I shall have set out from the city. 5. We shall make use of the corn. 6. The lieutenant is striving to get possession of⁷ the camp. 7. Let us strive to get possession of⁷ the baggage. 8. They attempt to get possession of⁵ the camp. 9. The Gauls were striving to get possession of the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Present Stem of Deponent Verbs is found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the Ending -rī in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugation.

tions, and the Ending-*i* in the Third (cf. 38): e. g. *HORTĀri*, *VERĒri*, *POTĪri*, and *Ūri* are Present Infinitives; *HORTĀ*, *VERĒ*, *POTĪ*, and *Ū* their Present Stems.

The **Supine Stem** of Deponent Verbs is found in the Perfect Participle by dropping the ending *us* (cf. 50): e. g. *HORTĀtus*, *VERĪtus*, *POTĪtus*, and *Ūsus* are Perfect Participles; *HORTĀt*, *VERĪt*, *POTĪt*, and *Ūs* their Supine Stems.

² *morĕtus*, *having delayed*.

³ *dīs*, why in the Accusative?

⁴ *finibus*, *limits*.

⁵ See 69.

⁶ *nostrī*, *our men*.

⁷ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ See 39.

Which Stem is wanting in Deponent Verbs? What is a Deponent Verb? What is the derivation and meaning of *deponent*? See under *dēpōnō*, General Vocabulary.



LESSON LIV.*

GENERAL EXERCISE: PLACE.

105. Place to which. A. & G. 258, *b*: A. & S. 425, 426 (1): B. 182, 1: G. 337: H. 380, I., II., 2, 1).

106. Place at or in which. A. & G. 258, *c, d*: A. & S. 425; 426 (1), (2), *a*: B. 228; 232: G. 385; 411: H. 425, I., II.; 426, 2.

107. Place from which. A. & G. 258, *a*: A. & S. 425; 426 (1): B. 239: G. 391: H. 412, I., II., 1.

a. 105 answers the question *Whither?* or *To what place?* 106, *Where?* or *In what place?* 107, *Whence?* or *From what place?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesar Genāvam (105) contendit, *Caesar hastened TO GENEVA.*
2. Liscus Aquilēiae (106) fuit, *Liscus was IN AQUILEIA.*
3. Cassius Rōmā (107) vēnit, *Cassius came FROM ROME.*
4. Divitiacus plūrimum domī poterat, *Divitiacus was very powerful AT HOME.*

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER: — The Lesson from Eutropius on page 173 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

VOCABULARY.

domus, -ūs, f.	<i>house, home: domī, at home; domum, home, homeward; domō, from home.</i>
nihil (an indecl. neuter noun),	<i>nothing.</i>
Noviodūnum, -ī, n.	<i>Noviodunum.</i>
plūrimus, -a, -um,	<i>most: plūrimum posse, to be very powerful.</i>
prae-mittō, -ere, -mīlī, -mīssum,	<i>send forward.</i>
re-vertor, -vertī, -versus sum,	<i>return.</i>
Suēvī, -ōrum, m.	<i>the Sueri.</i>
trā-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,	<i>lead across.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Cōsulēs Rōmae plūrimōs¹ annōs² fuērunt. 2. Rōmā vērunt lēgātī Genāvam. 3. Divitiacus plūrimum³ domī⁴ atque in reliquā Galliā poterat.³ 4. Imperātor omnem equitātum Noviodūnum praemisit. 5. Domum mittam puerōs malōs. 6. Suēvī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant et domum revertēbantur. 7. Nitēmur ut Norēiam revertāmur. 8. Sī Rōmā proficiscāmur,⁵ nōn domum revertāmur. 9. Verēmur ut⁶ nostrī amīcī Rōmae multōs diēs maneat.⁶ 10. Helvētīi iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall be at home very many¹ days.² 2. The friends will come home. 3. They came from Noviodunum to Rome. 4. The consul sent forward all the troops to Geneva. 5. He fears that we shall not⁶ return⁶ home. 6. Let⁷ us return home. 7. They will attempt to return to Geneva. 8. He was not able to return home. 9. If the soldiers had marched more quickly⁸ they would have come to the banks of the Rhone.

Notes.

- ¹ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2. ² See 93.
³ See Ex. 4. ⁴ How is *domus* declined? (97)
⁵ How is the Present Subjunctive, with *et* translated? (LN. XXIX. Ex. 1.)
⁶ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4 and XLIX., NOTE 4.
⁷ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.
⁸ See LN. LII., NOTE 8 and LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.



LESSON LV.

NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE.

108. Learn the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*, the declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille*. A. & G. 94, *a-e*: A. & S. 146; 156; 157 (1), (2); 158-160; 161, *g*: B. 78-81: G. 94-96; 293: H. 171; 172; 174-179.

109. *Extent in Space.* A. & G. 257: A. & S. 423: B. 181: G. 335; 336: H. 379. This answers such questions as *How far?* *How deep?* *How high?* *How wide?* *How long?*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Castra ab urbe mīlia passuum octō absunt, the camp is EIGHT MILES distant from the city.*
2. *Flūmen pedēs vigintī altum est, the river is TWENTY FEET deep.*
3. *Mōns pedēs nōngentōs altus est, the mountain is NINE HUNDRED FEET high.*

VOCABULARY.

alter, altera, alterum,
lātus, -a, -um,
longus, -a, -um,
passus, -ūs, m.

one of two, the other.
wide.
long.
step, pace; mīle passuum, a mile;
lit., a thousand paces.

pēs, pedis, m.

pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum,

vigilia, -ae, f.

foot.

place, put; castra pōnere, to pitch a camp.

watch; dē primā vigiliā, in the first watch.

N. B. No numerals will be given in the Vocabularies; they must be learned from the grammar.

Translate and parse.

1. Flūmen est pedēs quadrāgintā trēs lātum.¹ 2. Mōns decem mīlia² trecentōs pedēs altus est. 3. Fossa pedēs trecentōs longa est, sex pedēs alta. 4. Fossa pedēs quīndecim lāta est. 5. Militēs duās fossās quīndecim pedēs lātās fōdērunt. 6. Caesar domum³ tertiam⁴ legiōnem mīsīt. 7. Dē tertiā vigiliā⁵ centum et trīgintā quīnque militēs praemittit. 8. Mīlia passuum⁶ tria ab urbe castra posuit. 9. Oppida ad⁷ quadrāgintā et vīcōs ad quadringentōs incendunt. 10. Erant itinera duo: ūnum per Sēquanōs; alterum per prōvinciam nostram. 11. Summa⁸ erat capitum Helvētiōrum⁹ mīlia ducenta et sexāgintā tria. 12. Circiter mīlia hominum centum et trīgintā superfuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The river is sixteen feet deep. 2. The river is two hundred feet wide. 3. The mountain is eight thousand feet high. 4. The river is ninety-four miles long. 5. The men dug a ditch ten feet deep. 6. We shall send the soldiers home in the second watch. 7. They burned about eighty towns. 8. We shall pitch our camp about twenty miles from Rome.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What does *lātum* modify? What is it modified by?

² Spelled also with two l's: *mīllia*.

³ See 105.

⁴ What kind of a numeral is *tertiā*?

⁵ The Romans divided the night into four equal parts named *prima vigilia, secunda vigilia, tertia vigilia, quarta vigilia*.

⁶ A Roman pace (*passus*) as a measure of length was about five feet.

⁷ *ad* with numerals signifies *about*.

⁸ *summa, the sum total*.

⁹ *capitum Helveticorum, of the Helvetii; lit. of the heads of the Helvetii*.



LESSON LVI.

COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME.

110. Compound Nouns. A. & G. 77, 6, *a*: A. & S. 300, *a*: H. 125; 126.

111. Ablative of Time. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 424: B. 230; 231; G. 393: H. 429. The *Ablative of Time* answers the questions *When? At what time? Within what time?* What question does the *Accusative of Time* answer? See 93.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Diē septimō pervēnit, he arrived* ON THE SEVENTH DAY.
2. *Proximā nocte castra mōvit, THE NEXT NIGHT he broke up camp.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>dī-vidō, -videre, -visi, -visum,</i>	<i>divide, separate.</i>
<i>in-colō, -colere, -colui, -cultum,</i>	<i>inhabit, dwell.</i>
<i>iūs-iurandum, iūris-iurandī, n.</i>	<i>oath.</i>
<i>lacus, -ūs, m.</i>	<i>lake.</i>
<i>mēnsis, -is, m.</i>	<i>month.</i>
<i>potēns, potentis, adj.</i>	<i>able, powerful.</i>
<i>prō, prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>before, for.</i>
<i>rēs-pública, rei-públicae, f.</i>	<i>republic, commonwealth.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. *Gallī Rōmānīs¹ iūs-iurandum dedērunt.*
2. *Dixit Gallōs Rōmānīs iūs-iurandum dedisse.²*
3. *Multās rēs*

iūre-iūrandō³ sānxērunt (*they ratified*). 4. In⁴ rem-pūblicam lēgātus sex legiōnēs dūxit. 5. Prō rē-pūblicā; prō castrīs. 6. Per trēs potentissimōs populōs tōtīus⁶ Galliae. 7. In finēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt. 8. Proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā⁶ castra mōvērunt. 9. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās suās ēdūxit. 10. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus in castra redūxit. 11. Domī⁷ mānsērunt septem mēnsēs.⁸ 12. Quadrā-gintā trēs annōs rēgnāvit. 13. Nitāmur⁹ ut sōlis occāsū proficiscāmur.¹⁰ 14. Gallia est¹¹ omnis divīsa¹¹ in partēs trēs, quārum (*of which*) ūnam¹² incolunt Belgae, aliam¹² Aquitānī,¹³ tertiam¹² Galli.¹³ 15. Ā lacū Lemannō ad mōntem Iūram fossam vīgintī pedēs¹⁴ lātam fōdit. 16. Dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus est. 17. Dicit hostēs sub mōnte castra posuisse milia¹⁴ pas-suum ab nostrīs castrīs octō.¹⁵

Notes.

¹ See 39.² See LN. XVII.³ See 54.⁴ in, *against*.⁵ Which adjectives are declined like tōtus ? (24)⁶ See LN. LV., NOTE 5.⁷ See 106.⁸ See 93.⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.¹⁰ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.¹¹ est — divīsa is the same as divīsa — est.¹² Understand partem.¹³ Subject of incolunt understood.¹⁴ See 109.¹⁵ octō modifies milia.

LESSON LVII.

PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE.

112. Learn the declension of ego, tū, suī. A. & G. 98, 1, 2, 6, 3; 99, d, e; A. & S. 178; 179; 186; 431, e; 449, (1): B. 82-86: G. 99-102: H. 182, 184, 2, 3, 4, 6; 185.

Translate and parse.

1. Ego¹ sum malus² sed tū es bonus. 2. Ego vōs sub iugum mittam. 3. Nōs vōbīs³ amīcī sumus. 4. Nūntiat nōbīs tē vēnisse. 5. Ego dē prīmā vigiliā profectus essem, sī tū vēnissēs. 6. Nostra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur. 7. Obsidēs inter sēsē⁴ dant. 8. Inter sē iūs-iūrandum dant. 9. Omnēs linguā,⁵ institūtis,⁶ lēgibus⁶ inter sē⁵ differunt (*differ*). 10. Helvētiī suis finibus⁷ Germānōs prohibēbant. 11. Caesar suōs militēs in Galliam mittet sed in prōvinciam nostrōs.⁸ 12. Tuus fīlius in Galliam citeriōrem iter faciet.

Write in Latin.

1. I am a Roman, but you are a Gaul. 2. He will announce to you (that) we have come. 3. Your plans will be reported to us. 4. The Helvetii and Sequani will give hostages to each other. 5. He says (that) the Gauls and Germans will give hostages to each other. 6. I shall send my soldiers home⁹ but yours into Gaul. 7. You will be friendly to us. 8. I fear that you will not¹⁰ be¹¹ friendly to us.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing a pronoun.* — *ego* is a personal pronoun ; declined, *ego, mei, mihi, mē, mē* ; Plural, *nōs, nostrum* or *nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs* ; made in the Nominative Singular, because it is the subject of *sum* ; rule (see 32).

² See 64.

³ See 36.

⁴ *inter sēsēs, to each other ; lit. among themselves.*

⁵ *inter sēs, from one another.*

⁶ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ *nostrōs, ours : sc. militēs.*

⁹ See 105.

¹⁰ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

¹¹ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

LESSON LVIII.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): DEMONSTRATIVE.

113. Learn the declension and meanings of *hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem*. A. & G. 100-102: A. & S. 180-182: B. 87; 88: G. 103; 104: H. 186, I.-VI.

Analyze and parse.

1. *Hōrum*¹ omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 2. *Hī* omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. 3. *Eōrum*² ūna pars initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. 4. *Minimē*³ ad eōs mercātōrēs⁴ saepe commeant. 5. *Eī* filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. 6. *Is* sibi⁵ lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. 7. *Ea* rēs est⁶ *Helvētiis* ēnūntiāta. 8. *Eōdem* diē⁷ cum duābus⁸ legiōnibus proficiscētur et iis⁹ ducibus. 9. *Ipse*¹⁰ ex *Helvētiis* uxōrem habet. 10. *Ipsī* in eōrum¹¹ finibus bellum gerunt. 11. *Mīlia*¹² passuum tria⁸ ab eōrum castris castra pōnit. 12. Ab iisdem¹³ nostra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur. 13. *Ipse* dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere¹⁴ ad eōs contendit equitātumque¹⁵ omnem ante sē mittit.

Notes.

¹ Demonstrative pronouns are used sometimes substantively and sometimes adjectively: e. g. *hī omnēs differunt*, all THESE differ; *ad hās suspiciōnēs*, to THESE suspicions. In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

² *is* is very often used as a *Personal Pronoun* of the *Third Person*, and should then be rendered by the proper case and number of *he, she, it*; e. g. *is sibi suscēpit*, HE took upon himself; *ad eōs*, to THEM; *in eōrum finibus*, in THEIR territory; *ēius militēs*, HIS soldiers; *eī dat*, he gives TO HIM.

³ *minimē* modifies *saepe*.

⁴ See 32.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ *est ēnūntiāta* = *ēnūntiāta est*.

⁷ See 111.

⁸ See 108.

⁹ Is *is* used substantively or adjectively ?

¹⁰ *ipse* — *habet*, *he himself has*.

¹¹ See NOTE 2.

¹² See 109.

¹³ When a Demonstrative Pronoun is used as a substantive, we may supply in translation the word *one*, *man*, *men*, *persons*, or *soldiers*, if masculine ; *thing* or *things*, if neuter : e. g. *hic est fortis*, *THIS ONE is brave*, or *THIS MAN is brave* ; *ab hisdem*, *by THE SAME PERSONS* ; *idem cōnantur*, *they attempt THE SAME THING*.

¹⁴ *eodem itinere*, *by the same route*.

¹⁵ See LN. XXIV., NOTE 1.



LESSON LIX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*) : RELATIVE.

114. Declension. A. & G. 103 ; 104, *e* : A. & S. 184 : B. 89 : G. 105 : H. 187, 2.

115. Agreement. A. & G. 198 : A. & S. 342 : B. 250 : G. 613 ; 614 : H. 445, NOTE 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Aquitānia ad eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet*, *Aquitania extends to that PART of the Ocean WHICH is near Spain*.
2. *Flūmine Rhēnō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit*, *by the river RHINE, WHICH separates the territory of the Helvetii from the Germans*.
3. *Proximique sunt Germānis, quibuscum¹ bellum gerunt*, *and they are very near TO THE GERMANS, with WHOM they carry on war*.

Analyze and parse.

1. *Proximique sunt Germānis,² quī³ trāns Rhēnum incolunt*. 2. *Ad mōntem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit*. 3. *Ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae oppidum⁴ extrēmum*. 4. *Allobrogēs, quī*

trāns Rhodanum vicōs possēssiōnēsq̄ue habēbant, ad Caesarem veniunt. 5. Vocat Casticum, cūius⁵ pater rēgnum multōs annōs⁶ obtinuerat. 6. Pōntem,⁷ quī est ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī.⁸ 7. Undique locī nātūrā⁹ Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte¹⁰ flūmine¹¹ Rhēnō¹² lātissimō atque altissimō, quī¹³ agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit; alterā¹⁴ ex parte mōnte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā¹⁵ lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dīvidit.

Write in Latin.

1. They are nearest to the Aquitani, who dwell across the Garonne. 2. The Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 3. He summons Titus, whose brother held the sovereignty many years. 4. The Germans, who had possessions across the Rhine, came to Geneva. 5. He came with the very¹⁰ soldiers whom we have seen. 6. He comes with the soldiers, of whom he has a very large number.

Notes.

¹ Observe that *cum* is appended to the Ablative of Relative and Personal Pronouns.

² See 36.

³ *Form for parsing a relative.* — *quī* is a Relative Pronoun; declined, *quī, quae, quod, cūius*, etc. (give its entire declension); made in the Masculine Plural to agree with its antecedent *Germānis* (see 115); and in the Nominative, because it is the subject of *incolunt* (32).

⁴ See 64.

⁵ *cūius, whose.*

⁶ See 23.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ *ūnā ex parte, on one side.*

¹¹ See 54.

¹² See 25.

¹³ A. & G. 199: A. & S. 343 a: B. 250, 3: G. 614, REMARK 3 b: H. 445, 4.

¹⁴ *alterā, second.*

¹⁵ *tertiā, sc. ex parte.*

¹⁶ Translate *the very* by the proper case of *ipse*.

LESSON LX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

116. Learn the declension of the Interrogatives **quis** and **quī**; of the Indefinites **aliquis** and **quīs**. A. & G. 104, *a, e*; 105, *d*: A. & S. 183; 184, *a, b*: B. 91, 1: G. 106; 107: H. 188, I, II, 1, 3; 189; 190, 1, NOTE 1.

a. ali-quis is used both as a *substantive* and as an *adjective*; as a *substantive* it is declined as follows:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> ali-quis,	ali-quid,
	<i>Gen.</i> ali-cūius,	ali-cūius,
	<i>Dat.</i> ali-cui,	ali-cui,
	<i>Acc.</i> ali-quem,	ali-quid,
	<i>Abl.</i> ali-quō,	ali-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> ali-quī,	
	<i>Gen.</i> ali-quōrum,	
	<i>Dat.</i> ali-quibus,	
	<i>Acc.</i> ali-quōs,	
	<i>Abl.</i> ali-quibus.	

As an *adjective* it is declined :

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> ali-quis and ali-quī,	ali-qua,	ali-quod,
	<i>Gen.</i> ali-cūius,	ali-cūius,	ali-cūius,
	<i>Dat.</i> ali-cui,	ali-cui,	ali-cui,
	<i>Acc.</i> ali-quem,	ali-quam,	ali-quod,
	<i>Abl.</i> ali-quō,	ali-quā,	ali-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> ali-quī,	ali-quae,	ali-qua,
	<i>Gen.</i> ali-quōrum,	ali-quārum,	ali-quōrum,
	<i>Dat.</i> ali-quibus,	ali-quibus,	ali-quibus,
	<i>Acc.</i> ali-quōs,	ali-quās,	ali-qua,
	<i>Abl.</i> ali-quibus,	ali-quibus,	ali-quibus.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quis mē vocat?* WHO calls me?
2. *Quem vidisti?* WHOM did you see?
3. *Quid domum nōn vērunt?* WHY have they not come home?
4. *Aliquem ad mē mittent,* they will send SOMEBODY to me.
5. *Allquid accidit,* SOMETHING has happened.
6. *Sī quid accadat Rōmānīs,* if ANYTHING should happen to the Romans.

Parse the pronouns.

1. *Quis vōs vocāvit?* 2. *Quem videō?* 3. *Aliquem vīdī.* 4. *Aliquōs ad eum mīsērunt.* 5. *Aliquem locum occupāvit.* 6. *Cum aliquibus prīncipum vēnit.* 7. *Sī quis veniat, laeter.* 8. *Quid nōn domī fuistī?* 9. *Quae est mulier quae vēnit?* 10. *Sī quid mihi accadat, nōn laetēris.* 11. *Sī quid Rōmānīs accadat, nōn fortitēr pūgnent.* 12. *Aliquem ad tē mittam.* 13. *Aliquis dīxit hunc esse cōnsulem.* 14. *Eum hortābor ut cum aliquibus militum proficiscātur.* 15. *Vereor nē quis veniat.* 16. *Vereor nē quid eī accadat.* 17. *Ut aliquōs virōrum mittant, eōs hortēmur.* 18. *Cum aliquibus prīncipum ille vēnit.*



LESSON LXI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

117. A. & G. 25, h; 154, a, b; 208: A. & S. 74 (7); 562; 565; 566: G. 16, 7, REMARK 3; 474-480; 481, 1-3: H. 309-311; 554, I., 2.

VOCABULARY.

aut, conj.

et — et, conj.

itaque, conj.

or; aut — aut, either — or.

both — and.

accordingly, therefore.

nam , conj.	<i>for.</i>
ne , nōnne , num ,	interrogative particles (see NOTE 1).
neque , conj.	<i>and not; neque — neque, neither — nor.</i>
postquam , conj.	<i>after, as soon as.</i>
propterea , adv.	<i>for this reason.</i>
quamquam , conj.	<i>although.</i>
quod , conj.	<i>because.</i>
sed , conj.	<i>but.</i>

Translate, and parse¹ the conjunctions.

1. Imperātor et³ māgnus et fortis est. 2. Neque³ māgnī neque fortēs sunt cōsulēs. 3. Dux nōn māgnus est sed fortis. 4. Dumnorigem vocat eīque⁴ filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat. 5. Itaque rem suscēpit. 6. Hōrum⁶ omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea⁵ quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē⁶ absunt. 7. Helvētīi iter per prōvinciam faciunt, propterea⁵ quod aliud⁷ iter habent nūllum.⁷ 8. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus⁸; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. 9. Aut⁸ suis finibus⁹ eōs prohibent, aut ipsī¹⁰ in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. 10. Mīles, quamquam est fortis, nōn pūgnābit. 11. Postquam Caesar pervēnit, ita respondit. 12. Fortisne¹¹ est cōsul? 13. Nōnne fortēs sunt cōsulēs? 14. Num fortis est cōsul? 15. Sī quid habērem,¹² id tibi darem. 16. Nītitur ut vincat.¹³ 17. Nōnne cōsulēs domum vēnerant? 18. Num Titus lēgātus circum Genāvam hiemāvit?

Notes and Questions.

¹ **ne** is used to ask for information merely; **nōnne**, when the answer *yes*, and **num**, when the answer *no* is expected or implied; e. g. *bonusne est puer?* *is the boy good?* *nōnne bonus est puer?* *is not the boy good?* i. e. the boy is good, is he not? *num bonus est puer?* *the boy is not good, is he?*

² *To parse a conjunction* is to tell whether it is coördinate or subordinate; to which subdivision of its class it belongs; what it connects: e. g.

in sentence 6, *quod* is a *subordinate conjunction*, because it connects a subordinate with a principal clause; *causal*, because it introduces a reason; it connects the subordinate clause *propterea* — *absunt* with the principal clause *hōrum* — *Belgae*.

⁸ When a conjunction is doubled, as *et* — *et*, *aut* — *aut*, the first strengthens the union or opposition denoted by the second.

⁴ See 39 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2. ⁵ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 1.

⁶ See LN. XLII.

⁷ See 24.

⁸ Use the same word, *Tigurinus*, in translation.

⁹ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹⁰ What does *ipsi* emphasize?

¹¹ The interrogative particle *ne* is appended to the first word of its clause.

¹² *habērem*, *I had*.

¹³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

LESSON LXII.*

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

118. A good knowledge of the subject treated under the following References will aid materially in translating and understanding the *Ablative Absolute*, *Subjunctive Mood*, and *Indirect Discourse*. A. & G. 171–182, *coarse and fine print*: A. & S. 309–315: B. 160–165: G. 201; 202; 472, 1–4; 475; 504–507: H. 345–351; 354–361.

VOCABULARY.

civis, -is, m. and f.

citizen.

in-fluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxum,

flow into, empty.

inter-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,

kill.

poscō, *poscere*, *poposci*, (no supine)

demand.

postquam, conj.

after, as soon as.

re-spondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum,

reply, answer.

Translate and analyze¹ the following sentences.

1. *Ēius rei populus Rōmānus est testis*. 2. *Divicō re-spondit² ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem*. 3. *Hic*

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — The Lesson from Eutropius on page 173 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

pāgus ūnus Lūcium Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. 4. Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit. 5. Flūmen³ est Arar, quod in Rhodanum influit. 6. Caesar ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad mōntem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, fossam perdūcit. 7. Quis⁴ es? Cīvis Rōmānus sum. 8. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā propter angustias ire (*to go*) nōn poterant. 9. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī,⁵ quam fēcerat, Titum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. 10. Vēnī ut tē videam.

Write in Latin.

1. Did the enemy send our army under the yoke? 2. They will not send us home, will they⁶? 3. Did he not demand hostages as soon as he arrived? 4. Who are those men? They are Roman citizens. 5. Who has come to see us? 6. The Rhone is a river which empties into the sea. 7. One way is left through the Alps by which we shall not be able to march on account of the enemy. 8. We shall either keep the Gauls from our territory or carry on war with them. 9. This man is both great and good. 10. We shall march through Gaul because we have no other way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., EXAMPLES and NOTES.

² What is the object of *respondit*?

³ See 64.

⁴ See 64; what is the subject of *es*?

⁵ See 67.

⁶ See LN. LXI., Note 1.

LESSON LXIII.

PARTICIPLES.

119. Definition. A. & G. 25, *e*; 289: A. & S. 542: H. 548.

120. Distinctions of Tense. A. & G. 290: A. & S. 543-545: B. 336, 1-5: G. 282; 283: H. 550.

121. Used for a Subordinate Clause. A. & G. 292: A. & S. 547: B. 337, 2: G. 664-668: H. 549, 1-5.

EXAMPLES.

- Sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōlēcērunt,** *all weeping threw themselves down at Caesar's feet.*
- Liscus multōs diēs morātus profectus est,** *Liscus HAVING DELAYED many days set out; or, Liscus, AFTER HE HAD DELAYED many days, set out.*
- Caesar eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēpit,** *Caesar HAVING BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties undertook the war; or, Caesar, BECAUSE HE HAD BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties, undertook the war.*
- Helvētīī ēius adventū commōtī lēgātōs mittunt,** *the Helvetii BECAUSE DISTURBED (or, BECAUSE THEY HAVE BEEN DISTURBED) by his arrival send legates.*

VOCABULARY.

ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,	<i>lead to, influence.</i>
flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētum,	<i>weep.</i>
in-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,	<i>lead into, induce.</i>
petō, petere, petīvī and petīī, petītum,	<i>beseech, ask, beg for.</i>
prō-icēō, -icere, -icēī, -iectum,	<i>throw forward; sē prōicere, to throw one's self down.</i>

Analyze, and parse the participles.

- Omnēs flentēs¹ pācem petiērunt.
- Mulierēs flentēs virōs² implōrābant.
- Belgae spectant in orientem

sōlem. 4. Hostēs in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant. 5. Militēs sēsē Titō³ ad pedēs prōiciēnt. 6. Helvētiī hīs rēbus⁴ adductī⁵ cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem cōnfirmant. 7. Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus locūtus est. 8. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē⁶ iūs-iūrandum dant. 9. Is⁷ rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. 10. Sēquanī paucōs diēs morātī ad⁸ Genāvam profectī sunt. 11. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs ad eum⁷ mīsērunt. 12. Caesar dē tertiā vigiliā profectus ad⁹ Genāvam pervēnit. ,

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers weeping throw themselves down at the feet of Cassius. 2. Our (soldiers) hurl weapons against the advancing enemy. 3. The Gauls, after they had delayed a few days, set out towards Rome. 4. Ariovistus, because he had been disturbed by Caesar's arrival, sent legates to him.⁷ 5. The Germans having delayed a few days came across the Rhine. 6. The Gauls, because disturbed by Caesar's arrival, send legates to him.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Parse a participle like an adjective (LN. VI., NOTE 1), giving in addition the principal parts of its verb and the different participles formed from the verb.

² *virōs, husbands.*

³ See 39; translate as if it were a Genitive.

⁴ See 54.

⁵ Imitate the Examples in translating the participles.

⁶ See LN. LVII., NOTE 4.

⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁸ *ad, towards, for.*

⁹ *ad, in the vicinity of.*

¹⁰ What participles has a transitive verb? See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 5.

LESSON LXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

122. A. & G. 255 and NOTE: A. & S. 422, d: B. 227: G. 409;
410: H. 431, 1, 2, 4.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pisōne cōsulibus, Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso consuls; or better, in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.*
2. *Hōc respōnsō datō discessit,*

a. <i>this reply having been given</i> b. <i>when this reply had been given</i> c. <i>having given this reply</i> d. <i>after giving this reply</i> e. <i>after he had given this reply</i>	}	<i>he departed.</i>
---	---	---------------------

VOCABULARY.

con-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum,	turn about, change.
dis-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,	depart.
ibi, adv.	there.
re-liquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum,	leave behind, leave.
respōnsum, -ī, n.	answer, reply.
re-vertor, -vertī, -versus sum,	return.

Analyze and parse.

1. *Hāc ōrātiōne¹ habitā² Caesar concilium dīmīsīt.*
2. *Hāc ōrātiōne ab Divitiacō habitā omnēs auxilium petiērunt.*
3. *Hāc ōrātiōne habitā conversae sunt omnium mentēs.*
4. *Convocatīs eōrum³ principibus Caesar graviter⁴ eōs accūsāt.*
5. *Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pisōne cōsulibus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcīt.*
6. *Ibi Centrōnēs⁵ locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere⁶ exercitum*

prohibere cōnantur. 7. Mūnītis castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum. 8. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvī domum⁷ revertī coepērunt (*began*). 9. Convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum⁸ māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, graviter eōs accūsāt. 10. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. When this speech had been delivered by Caesar all begged for⁹ peace. 2. After giving this reply all departed. 3. He came to Rome⁷ in the consulship of Titus and Cassius. 4. Having fortified the camp he set out with a part of the auxiliaries. 5. After this battle had been reported across the Rhone the Sequani began to return home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The pupil should exercise skill and taste in translating the Ablative Absolute; in analyzing tell what relation it bears to the rest of the sentence.

² *habita*, from *habeo*, signifying *hold, deliver, make*.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁴ From what adjective is *graviter* derived? What is the Stem of the adjective? What is the ending of the adverb? See LN. XLII.

⁵ See General Vocabulary.

⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁷ See 105.

⁸ What is the gender and number of *quōrum*? Why? (115) In what case is it? Why? (40)

⁹ *for* belongs to the *verb*; *peace* must be rendered by the *Accusative*.

LESSON LXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS: FERŌ.

123. Learn the entire conjugation of *ferō*. A. & G. 139: A. & S. 245: B. 129: G. 171: H. 292.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb.

1. Dux suis¹ auxilium fert. 2. Auxilium militibus² ā duce fertur. 3. Sī dux suis auxilium ferat,³ laetentur.³ 4. Sī auxilium militibus ā duce ferātur,³ laetentur.³ 5. Iī⁴ suis auxilium ferre nōn poterant. 6. Ferte, militēs, vestris¹ auxilium. 7. Populus Rōmānus diū iniūriās tulit. 8. Iniūriæ ā populō Rōmānō diū lātae sunt. 9. Populum Rōmānum hortātus est ut⁵ diū iniūriās ferrent.⁵ 10. Caesar dixit populum Rōmānum diū iniūriās tulisse. 11. Numerus eōrum,⁴ quī⁶ arma ferēbant māgnus fuit. 12. Numerus eōrum, ā quibus arma ferēbantur, māgnus fuit. 13. Numerus eōrum, quī arma ferre poterant, māgnus fuit. 14. Numerus eōrum, ā quibus arma ferri poterant,⁷ parvus fuit. 15. Sī Gallis auxilium ferrēs, Galli vincerent. 16. Sī quis⁸ Rōmānis auxilium tulisset, vicissent.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The *Plural Masculine* of Possessive Pronouns is often used alone where in translation some such word as *men, soldiers, friends*, may be supplied; the *Plural Neuter*, where we may supply *things, possessions*.

² See 39.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See 115.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁸ What is *quis* when immediately preceded by *et, nisi, nē, or num*? How is it declined? See LN. LX.

LESSON LXVI.

COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ. — ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

124. Ablative of Specification. A. & G. 253 : A. & S. 412 : B. 226 : G. 397 : H. 424. This answers the question *In what respect?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Virtūte praecēdunt, *they excel* IN COURAGE.
2. Numerō ad duodecim, *about twelve* IN NUMBER.

VOCABULARY.

ad-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tuli, ad-lātum, ¹	<i>bring to, carry to, offer.</i>
cōn-ferō, cōn-ferre, con-tuli, con-lātum,	<i>bring together, carry together, collect.</i>
dis-ferō, dis-ferre, dis-tuli, di-lātum,	<i>carry different ways; differ.</i>
in-ferō, in-ferre, in-tuli, in-lātum,	<i>bring into, bring upon, make upon.</i>
re-ferō, re-ferre, rettuli, re-lātum,	<i>bring back, carry back.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Hī omnēs linguā,² institūtis,² lēgibus² inter sē differunt. 2. Oppida sua omnia numerō² ad duodecim² incendunt. 3. Eō⁴ circiter⁵ hominum numerō sēdecim milia⁸ misit. 4. Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. 5. Helvētiī tōtī Galliae⁶ bellum inferēbant. 6. Pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat. 7. Helvētiī minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre poterant.⁷ 8. Obsidēs, arma, servī cōnferuntur. 9. Aeduī dīxērunt frūmentum cōnferri.⁸ 10. Caesar sarcinās¹⁰ in ūnum locum cōnferri⁸ iussit.⁹

11. *Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī*¹¹ *impedimenta*¹⁰ *in ūnum locum contulērunt.* 12. *Hīs respōnsīs*¹² *ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit.*

Write in Latin.

1. All differed from one another in language and laws.
2. They will burn their cities, about five in number.
3. The Romans will make war upon the Gauls.⁶ 4. I fear that the Romans will make¹³ war upon the Gauls.
5. Let¹⁴ us make war upon both the Germans and the Belgae.
6. The baggage will be collected into one place.
7. The Gauls, having followed with all their horses, collected the wagons.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Accent the compounds of *ferō* correctly: *ādferō*, *adferre*, *attuli*, *adiātum*.

² See 124.

³ See 108.

⁴ *et* is an adverb; see GEN. VY.

⁵ *circiter* modifies the numeral.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ *poterant*, *could*.

⁸ See 59.

⁹ *iussit*, from *iubeō*.

¹⁰ What is the difference between *sarcinae* and *impedimenta*? See General Vocabulary under *sarcina* and *impedimentum*.

¹¹ *secūtī* from *sequor*; where is it made?

¹² See 122.

¹³ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁴ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.



LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): **VOLO** AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

125. Learn the conjugation and meanings of *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.
A. & G. 138: A. & S. 242-244: B. 130: G. 174: H. 293.

VOCABULARY.

ā-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum,	<i>turn away.</i>
mālō, mālī, mālū,	<i>be more willing.</i>
nōlō, nōlle, nōlū,	<i>be unwilling, not wish.</i>
unde, adv.	<i>from which place, whence.</i>
vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	<i>be unoccupied.</i>
volō, velle, volū,	<i>be willing, wish.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of the verbs.

1. Aeduōs¹ flāgitāre² Titus frūmentum¹ vult. 2. Helvētiīs⁸ bellum inferre volumus. 3. Gallī finitimīs bellum inferre voluerant. 4. Sī lēgātus pūgnāre velit, hostēs fugiant. 5. Num⁴ proficīscī dē tertiā vigiliā vultis? 6. Dumnorix quam⁵ plūrimās civitatēs habēre volēbat. 7. Cōsul impedimenta⁶ in ūnum locum cōferri vult. 8. Sī vīs mē⁶ flēre. 9. Mōntem ā Cassiō occupārī voluit. 10. Mōns, quem⁶ ā Lābiēnō occupārī voluit, ab hostibus tenētur. 11. Dicit velle sēsē⁶ dē rē-pubicā⁷ cum eō loquī. 12. Caesar ab Helvētiīs discēdere² nōlēbat. 13. Nōluit eum locum vacāre Liscus. 14. Dixit Caesarem ab Helvētiīs discēdere² nōlle. 15. Nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre. 16. Vir iniūriās diū ferre nōlet. 17. Sī lēgātus iter facere nōlit, militēs laetentur. 18. Vereor nē⁸ dux suīs auxilium ferre nōlit.⁸ 19. Iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. 20. Pūgnāre² Helvētiī mālunt quam fugere.² 21. Nōnne māvīs tuīs⁹ auxilium ferre quam fugere? 22. Omnēs virtūte¹⁰, praecēdere māvult quam esse cōsul. 23. Gallīs prōdesse quam bellum inferre māluit. 24. Exercitū praeesse mālet quam domī¹¹ manēre.

Write in Latin.

1. You do not wish to burn the town, do you⁴?
2. They will wish to make war upon the Romans.⁸

3. I fear that the soldiers will not be willing⁸ to collect the baggage. 4. Let us be willing to follow with all our baggage. 5. If Caesar had been willing to fight, the soldiers would not have fled. 6. Titus does not wish this place to be unoccupied. 7. He will be unwilling to bring aid to his⁹ (friends). 8. You had been unwilling to make war upon (your) neighbors. 9. He will be more willing to fight than to flee. 10. The man was more willing to excel all in valor¹⁰ than to be rich. .

Notes.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| ¹ See 71. | |
| ² See A. & G. 271, <i>a</i> : A. & S. 532: B. 328, 1: G. 423, 2: H. 533. | |
| ³ See 67. | ⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1. |
| ⁵ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7. | ⁶ See 53. |
| ⁷ See 110. | ⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4. |
| ⁹ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1. | ¹⁰ See 124. |
| ¹¹ See 106. | |



LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): EŌ AND FĪŌ.

126. Learn the conjugation and meanings of *eŏ* and *fĭŏ*. A. & G. 141; 142: A. & S. 246; 248, *a*: B. 131; 132: G. 169; 173, NOTE 2: H. 294; 295, 1, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Dē Caesaris adventū certior factus est, he was informed of Caesar's arrival.*
2. *Caesar certior factus est hostēs castra posuisse, Caesar was informed that the enemy had pitched a camp.*
3. *Caesarem certiorē faciunt hostēs transire, they inform Caesar that the enemy is crossing.*

VOCABULARY.

certus, -a, -um,	<i>certain, sure ; certior fieri, to be informed ; lit., to be made more certain.</i>
eō, ire, ivi, itum,	<i>go.</i>
ex-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum,	<i>go out, go forth, depart.</i>
fiō, fieri, factus sum,	<i>be made, become, occur.</i>
trāns-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum,	<i>go across, cross.</i>

Conjugate the verbs and parse.

1. Domum¹ eunt; Rōmam ibō; Bibracte¹ eāmus.²
 2. Per angustias ibāmus; per Gallōrum finēs ivērunt.
 3. I³ miles, domum; ite, pueri, domum. 4. Hostēs per nostram prōvinciam iverant. 5. Lēgātus Bibracte ire contendit. 6. Caesar cum hīs quīque legiōnibus ire⁴ contendit. 7. In eam partem Galliae itūrōs⁵ esse Helvētiōs dixit. 8. Propter angustias ire⁴ nōn poterant. 9. Helvētiī dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exhibant. 10. Nītuntur ut ē finibus exeant.⁶ 11. Māgnus numerus eōrum⁷ domō⁸ exhibit. 12. Hic pāgus ūnus domō patrum nostrōrum memoriā⁹ exierat.¹⁰ 13. Flūmen Helvētiī rati-bus¹¹ trānsībant. 14. Sī flūmen trānseant,¹² eōs vincāmus. 15. Sī hostēs Rhodanum trānsire cōnentur, prohibeāmus. 16. Boi¹³ trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum¹³ trānsierant. 17. Undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fiēbat. 18. Hīs rēbus¹⁴ fiēbat. 19. Dē eius⁷ adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt. 20. Caesar eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus suās cōpiās praemittere volēbat. 21. Duo virī cōsulēs¹⁵ factī erunt. 22. Per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est Sēquanōs per prōvinciam iter fēcisse.¹⁶

Notes and Questions.

¹ What question do **domum** and **Bibracte** answer? See 105, a.

² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

³ In what is the Imperative used? (47)

⁴ See 69.

⁵ Why is **itūrōs** in the Acc. Plural?

⁶ How is the Subjunctive with *ut* to be translated after verbs of *striving* and *endeavoring*?

⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁸ What question does *domō* answer?

⁹ See 111.

¹⁰ *exierat* = *exilverat*.

¹¹ *ratis*, -is, f. *raft*.

¹² See LN. XXIX., EX. 1.

¹³ See GEN. VY.

¹⁴ See 79.

¹⁵ See 64.

¹⁶ See EX. 2.

LESSON LXIX.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

127. Defective Verbs. A. & G. 143, a-c, NOTE: A. & S. 249 (1)-(3): B. 133: G. 175, 5: H. 297, I., 2.

128. Impersonal Verbs. A. & G. 145: A. & S. 250: B. 138: G. 208, 1, 2: H. 298; 299.

129. Infinitive as Subject. A. & G. 270: A. & S. 531: B. 327, 1, 2: G. 422: H. 538.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Perfacile est imperiō potiri* (129), *it is very easy TO GET POSSESSION OF the government.*
2. *Mihi ire licet* (129) *licet*, *it is permitted me TO GO*; or, *I may go.*
3. *Mihi ire licuit*, *it was permitted me TO GO*; or, *I might have gone.*
4. *Rogat ut id sibi facere liceat*, *he asks that it be permitted him TO DO this*: better, *he asks permission to do this.*
5. *Rogābat ut id sibi facere licēret*, *he was asking that it be permitted him TO DO this*; or, *permission to do this.*
6. *Mē ire* (129) *oportet*, *it is necessary that I should go*; or, *I ought to go.*
7. *Mē ire oportuit*, *it was necessary that I should go*; or, *I ought to have gone.*
8. *Dicit mē ire oportēre*, *he says it is necessary that I should go*; or, *he says that I ought to go.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Meminērunt,¹ ōdērunt. 2. Memineram Titum, videram Cassium. 3. Mementō venīre²; dīcit sē meminisse. 4. Liscus dīxit Dumnorigem ōdisse Caesarem et Rōmānōs. 5. Et tē et illum³ ōderāmus. 6. Neque⁴ mē neque eum ōdit. 7. Divitiacus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem obsecrāre⁵ coepit. 8. Suēvī, quī⁶ ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt. 9. Omnēs milītēs Rhodanum trānsire coepērunt. 10. Frūmentum⁷ cōferri⁸ oportet. 11. Nōs⁷ Rhēnum trānsire oportuit.⁹ 12. Dīcit illum ad sē venīre oportēre.¹⁰ 13. Caesarem dē ēius adventū certiōrem¹¹ fieri oportuit. 14. Rogāvērunt ut sibi¹² licēret concilium tōtīus Galliae convocāre. 15. Rogāvit ut sibi ire licēret. 16. Tibi eō diē ire licēbit. 17. Perfacile est tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiri. 18. Tibi Caesarem certiōrem facere dē meō adventū licet.¹³ 19. Tibi domum ire licuit.¹⁴

Write in Latin.

1. We shall go home. 2. Are you going home? 3. You ought to go home. 4. We ought to have gone home. 5. You can go to Geneva; you may go to Geneva; you ought to go to Geneva. 6. You could have gone to Bibractē; you might have gone to Bibracte; you ought to have gone to Bibracte. 7. You are not going to Rome, are you? 8. Are you not going to Rome? 9. Who will go home with me? 10. He says that corn ought to be collected. 11. We shall ask that it be permitted us to go home. 12. Let us go home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is a Defective Verb? What is an Impersonal Verb?

² See 52.

³ *illum, that one*; see LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.

⁵ See 69.

⁶ Where is *qui* made and why?

⁷ See 53.

⁸ See 129.

⁹ See EXAMPLE 7.

¹⁰ In this sentence *illum* is the subject of *venire*; *illum* — *venire*, the subject of *oportere*; *illum* — *oportere*, the object of *dicit*.

¹¹ See LN. LXVIII., EX. 1.

¹² How does this *sibi* differ from the *sibi* in sentence 15?

¹³ What is the subject of *licet*?

¹⁴ See EXAMPLE 3.



LESSON LXX.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

130. Periphrastic Conjugations. A. & G. 109, a; 129: A. & S. 229 (1), (2): B. 115: G. 129; 247; 251: H. 233; 234.

131. Dative of Agent. A. & G. 232: A. & S. 383: B. 189: G. 355: H. 388.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Doctūrus sum, I am about to teach; I intend to teach; I am to teach.*
2. *Doctūrus erat (fuit), he was about to teach; he was intending to teach; he was to teach.*
3. *Audiendī sumus, we must be heard; we ought to be heard.*
4. *Tibi (131) audiendī sumus, you must hear us; you ought to hear us.*
5. *Agri cōsulī vāstandī erant (fuērunt), the consul had to lay waste the fields.*
6. *Vēxillum prōpōnendum erat, the flag had to be displayed.*
7. *Oppidum oppūgnandum erit, the town will have to be stormed.*
8. *Oppidum vōbīs mūniendum erit, you will have to fortify the town.*

Translate¹ and parse.

1. Obsidēs tibi datūrus sum.² 2. Caesar mihi obsidēs datūrus fuit. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānōs vīctūrus fuit. 4. Hostēs ad ripās Rhēnī itūrī sunt. 5. Nūntiat hostēs ad ripās Rhēnī itūrōs esse. 6. Frūmentum³ Aeduōs³ flāgitātūrus lēgātus erat. 7. Domum itūrī sumus. 8. Patriae⁴ prōfutūrī estis. 9. Nōbīs⁵ bellum gerendum erit. 10. Duo cōsulēs creandī sunt. 11. In hostēs venientēs tēla nōbīs conicienda erant. 12. Oppidum lēgātō expūgnandum erit. 13. Per Alpēs mīlitibus iter faciendum erit. 14. Frūmentum Aeduīs dandum est.⁶ 15. Urbs dēlenda est. 16. Caesarī in Galliam mātūrandum est.⁷ 17. Caesar mātūrandum sibi esse exīstimāvit. 18. Dē ēius adventū Caesar certior⁸ faciendus est. 19. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum,⁹ quod¹⁰ erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī¹³ oportēret¹¹; signum tubā dandum⁹; ab opere revocandī¹² mīlītēs; quī¹⁶ paulō longius¹⁴ aggeris petendī causā¹⁵ prōcesserant arcessendī¹²; aciēs instruenda,⁹ mīlītēs cohortandī.¹²

Write in Latin.

1. I intend to write a letter. 2. I was intending to go to Bibracte. 3. The lieutenant was to storm the town. 4. My brother is about to go to the city. 5. The Gauls intend to carry on war with their neighbors. 6. The boys must hasten home. 7. We must carry on war with our neighbors. 8. You will have to fortify the town. 9. We shall have to exhort the soldiers. 10. The consul had to give the signal. 11. The city will have to be fortified. 12. The town had to be stormed.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Imitate the Examples in translation.
- ² Give the Synopsis and Conjugation of each Periphrastic form.
- ³ See 71. ⁴ See 67.
- ⁵ See 131 and Example 8; what is the literal translation?
- ⁶ What are the different translations of this sentence? See 39 and 131.
- ⁷ *mīturandum est* has no *personal* subject; verbs which do not take a Direct Object in the Active Voice have only the *impersonal* construction in the Passive.
- ⁸ See LN. LXVIII., EXAMPLE 1. ⁹ Supply *erat*.
- ¹⁰ Why is *quod* in the Neuter Singular?
- ¹¹ See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7; what is the subject of *oportēret*? Translate by the Indicative.
- ¹² Supply *erant*. ¹³ *concurri*, to rush.
- ¹⁴ *paulō longius*, a little too far.
- ¹⁵ *aggeris* — *causā*, for the purpose of seeking materials for a mound.
- ¹⁶ The antecedent of *qui* is *ii*, which is the subject of *arcessendī* (*erant*).

LESSON LXXI.

USE OF THE DATIVE.

132. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. A. & G. 226; 227: A. & S. 374 (1); 376: B. 187, II.: G. 346: H. 385, I., II., and NOTE 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Civitatī (132) persuāsit ut exīrent*,¹ he persuaded THE STATE to go forth.
2. *Novīs rēbus studēbat*, he was eager FOR A REVOLUTION; lit., for new things.
3. *Allobrogibus imperāvit*, he gave orders TO THE ALLOBROGES.
4. *Placuit eī (132) ut mitteret*,¹ it pleased HIM to send.
5. *Sī Allobrogibus satisfaciāt*, if he should give satisfaction TO THE ALLOBROGES.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hōc² facilius eīs persuāsīt, quod³ undique loci nātūrā⁴ Helvētīi continentur. 2. Is, Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pīsōne cōnsulibus,⁵ rēgnī cupiditāte inductus⁶ coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcīt et cīvitātī⁷ persuāsīt, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.¹ 3. Persuādēt Rauracīs et Tulingīs, finitimīs,⁸ utī, eōdem ūsī⁹ cōnsiliō,¹⁰ oppidīs⁵ suis vīcīsque exūstīs,¹¹ ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur.¹ 4. Orgetorix cupiditāte rēgnī adductus⁶ novīs rēbus¹² studēbat. 5. Liscus dīxit Dumnorigem favēre Helvētīis sed ōdisse¹³ Caesarem et Rōmānōs. 6. Caesar Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent.¹ 7. Quamobrem placuit¹⁴ eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret. 8. Huic legiōnī Caesar indulserat prae-cipue. 9. Si¹⁵ Aeduīs dē¹⁶ iniūriīs, quās ipsīs¹⁷ sociīs-que eōrum¹⁸ intulerint,¹⁹ item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, cum iīs pācem faciat.

Write in Latin.

1. We persuaded the men to go¹ forth. 2. They persuaded the Allobroges to go to Rome. 3. We shall persuade the Helvetii more easily for this reason,² because they are hemmed in on all sides by mountains. 4. We shall endeavor to persuade (our) neighbors to adopt⁹ the same plan, burn up¹¹ their houses and set out¹ in company with us. 5. We shall favor neither the enemy nor our friends. 6. He will give satisfaction to the citizens for¹⁶ the wrongs which he has brought upon them¹⁷ and their¹⁸ allies. 7. We can²⁰ not give you satisfaction for all the wrongs which we have brought upon you.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.² See 79.³ *quod* is a conjunction; what kind of a clause does it introduce?

⁴ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4 and 79.

⁵ See 122.

⁶ See LN. LXIII., EXAMPLES.

⁷ *civitatī*, *state*, is used here for *civibus*, *citizens*; hence the dependent clause has *exirent* instead of *exiret*.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ *ŭsi* from *ŭtor*, *to adopt*; lit., *having adopted, made use of*.

¹⁰ See 104.

¹¹ *oppidis — exŭstis*, *to burn up their towns, etc.*; lit., *their towns, etc., having been burned up.* (122)

¹² See Ex. 2.

¹³ What kind of a verb is *ŏdisse*? (127)

¹⁴ *placuit* is an impersonal verb in this sentence; what is its subject?

¹⁵ Sc. *satisfaciant*.

¹⁶ *dē*, *for*.

¹⁷ See 67.

¹⁸ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

¹⁹ *intulerint* from *inferō*; render it by the Perfect Indicative.

²⁰ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 1.

LESSON LXXII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

133. Ablative with Comparatives. A. & G. 247: A. & S. 416: B. 217: G. 398: H. 417.

134. Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. A. & G. 266; 267: A. & S. 472, 473, a: B. 274; 279: G. 255; 257; 260; 263: H. 483; 484, I., II., IV.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Nōn amplius mīlibus (133) passuum octōdecim aberat,*
he was not more THAN EIGHTEEN MILES distant.
2. *Nihil virtūte (133) melius est, nothing is better THAN VIRTUE.*
3. *Civēs meī sint (134) beātī, MAY my fellow-citizens BE happy.*
4. *Amēmus (134) patriam, LET US LOVE our country.*
5. *Veniat (134), LET HIM COME.*
6. *Nē hodiē proficiscāmur (134), LET US not SET OUT to-day.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quid virtūte melius est? 2. Scīmus sōlem māiōrem esse terrā. 3. Amīcitia, quā¹ nihil melius habēmus, nōbīs² ā dīs³ immortalibus data est. 4. Haec⁴ sunt dulciōra melle. 5. Militēs fortiōrēs sunt imperātōre. 6. Caesar ab oppidō nōn amplius milibus passuum duōbus castra posuit. 7. Ab urbe nōn amplius milibus passuum quīnque castra pōnēmus. 8. Ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille⁵ et quīngentīs passibus aberat. 9. Quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum octōdecim aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum⁶ exīstimāvit: ⁷ iter⁸ ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. 10. Militēs veniant. 11. Sītis⁹ beātī. 12. Hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus. 13. Caesarem dē ēius adventū certiōrem faciāmus. 14. Ad Bibracte dē quartā vigiliā nē profici-scāmur. 15. Lēgātus certior fiat dē meō cōnsiliō. 16. Iter celerius per Galliam faciāmus. 17. Cīvitātī¹⁰ persuā-deāmus ut exeant.¹¹ 18. Novīs rēbus nē studeāmus. 19. Hostibus patriae nē faveāmus. 20. Aeduīs dē iniū-riīs, quās eōrum sociīs¹² intulimus, satisfaciāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is bigger than Caesar. 2. Nothing is better than friendship. 3. The lieutenant is braver than the general. 4. We are not more than twenty miles from the city. 5. May we be brave. 6. Let us set out in the third watch. 7. Let us look out for supplies. 8. Let us not kill these men. 9. Let us persuade the citizens to go forth. 10. May it please¹³ you to send ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Let the enemy come. 12. Let us make haste to go home.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See 133.
² See 39.
³ See 20.
⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.
⁵ Is *mille* in this sentence an adjective or substantive? See 108.
⁶ Sc. esse. See 130.
⁷ *rei — existimāvit, he thought that he ought to look out for supplies.*
⁸ Introduce the translation of this clause with *accordingly*.
⁹ See EXAMPLE 3.
¹⁰ See 132.
¹¹ See LN. LXXI., NOTE 7.
¹² See 67.
¹³ See LN. LXXI., Example 4.



LESSON LXXIII.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES.

135. Sequence of Tenses. A. & G. 283-286: A. & S. 524-526: B. 258; 266, B.; 267: G. 225; 510: H. 198; 490-493.

136. Subjunctive of Purpose. A. & G. 317, REMARK: A. & S. 482: B. 282, 1, 2: G. 543-546; 630: H. 497, I., II. This answers such questions as *For what purpose? With what design? With what aim? To what end? Why? What?*

EXAMPLES.

- | | | | |
|--|---------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Venit | } ut videat, | he comes | } TO SEE, IN ORDER |
| 2. Veniet | | he will come | |
| 3. Vēnit | | he has come | |
| 4. Vēnerit | | he will have come | |
| 5. Veniēbat | } ut vidēret, | he was coming | } TO SEE, IN ORDER |
| 6. Vēnit | | he came | |
| 7. Vēnerat | | he had come | |
| 8. Ut cōsequī posset pōntem fēcit, he made a bridge THAT HE MIGHT BE ABLE TO pursue. | | | |
| 9. Postulāvit nē Aeduis bellum inferret, he demanded THAT HE SHOULD NOT MAKE war UPON the Aedui. | | | |

10. *Equitātum quī sustinēret impetum mīsit, he sent cavalry TO WITHSTAND the attack.*
 11. *Nē offenderet verēbātur, he was fearing THAT he should offend.*
 12. *Ut socii venirent verēbātur, he was fearing THAT the allies would NOT come.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent. 2. Caesar Dumnorigem monet, ut in reliquum tempus¹ suspiciōnēs vitet. 3. Nam, nē ēius supplicio² Divitiaci animum offenderet, verēbātur. 4. Dumnorigi persuāsit ut idem³ cōnārētur. 5. Cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. 6. Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt quī dicant agrōs cōnsuli⁴ vāstandōs esse.⁵ 7. Postulāvit nē aut Aeduīs⁶ aut eōrum sociīs⁶ bellum inferret. 8. Nōnnūllī pudōre adductī,⁷ ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. 9. Caesar omnium ex cōspectū remōtīs equis,⁸ ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus⁹ suōs¹⁰ proelium commisit. 10. Caesar ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mīsit, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem¹¹ locum medium utrīusque¹² conloquiō¹³ dīceret. 11. Castella commūnit, quō¹⁴ facilius, sī sē invitō¹⁵ trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Write in Latin.¹⁶

1. I shall give orders to the Gauls to furnish us with a supply of corn. 2. He had given orders to the Sequani to furnish a supply of corn to the soldiers. 3. We shall advise him¹⁷ to avoid suspicions in the future.¹ 4. We have advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 5. We advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 6. Caesar was fearing that Dumnorix would not avoid suspicions in the future. 7. We shall send cavalry to

withstand the attack of the Gauls. 8. Caesar, after removing his horse⁸ out of sight, urged his men to fight bravely. 9. He demanded that they should not make war either upon us or upon our allies. 10. We shall fortify the place that¹⁴ we may be able to more easily withstand an attack.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ *in reliquum tempus, in the future; lit., into the remaining time.*
² See 79.
³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13; where would *idem* be made?
⁴ See 131. ⁵ See 130 and 69.
⁶ See 67. ⁷ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 3.
⁸ See 122 and EXAMPLES. ⁹ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 2.
¹⁰ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1. ¹¹ How declined? See 116, a.
¹² *medium utriusque, midway between both; uterque* is declined like *uter*. (24)
¹³ See 39.
¹⁴ *quō* is preferred to *ut* when its clause contains a comparative.
¹⁵ *as invitō, against his will; see 122; lit., he unwilling.*
¹⁶ In writing these imitate carefully the preceding Latin sentences.
¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.



LESSON LXXIV.

USE OF THE DATIVE (*continued*).

137. Dative of the Person possessing. A. & G. 231: A. & S. 384: B. 190: G. 349: H. 387.

138. Two Datives. A. & G. 233, a: A. & S. 385; 386: B. 191, 2: G. 356: H. 390, I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Est mihi (137) domi pater, I have a father at home; lit., a father is to me at home.*
2. *Sex viri (137) filii fuerunt, A MAN had six sons.*

3. *Haec mihi (138) sunt cūrae, these (things) are A CARE TO ME; lit., these (things) are FOR A CARE TO ME.*
4. *Tertiam aciem nostris subsidio misit, he sent the third line AS A RELIEF TO OUR (MEN).*
5. *Novissimis praesidio erant, they were A PROTECTION TO THE HINDMOST.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Mihi est amicus; tibi sunt plurimi amici. 2. Magni pedes sunt meo fratri sed caput parvum. 3. Erit consuli magnus exercitus. 4. Imperatori fuerunt milites multi et¹ fortes. 5. Virtus est viro honori. 6. Dixit haec sibi esse cūrae. 7. Quinque cohortes castris praesidio reliquit. 8. Legatus² imperavit ut quinque cohortes castris praesidio relinqueret.³ 9. Magni usui nostris fuit. 10. Nam equitatu⁴, quem⁵ auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat. 11. Gallis magni ad pugnam⁶ erat⁷ impedimento, quod non satis commodē pugnare poterant. 12. Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus⁸ circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis⁹ praesidio erant, ex itinere¹⁰ nostros circumvenēre.¹¹ 13. His rebus¹² cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis¹³ confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futuram.¹⁴ 14. Ariovistus dixit amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio non detrimento esse¹⁵ oportere.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. My friend has four sons. 2. The lieutenant had many soldiers. 3. He will leave two legions as a protection to the camp. 4. The cavalry, which the lieutenant sent, was a great protection to the rear. 5. It was a great hindrance to us in battle that we could¹⁷ not fight with sufficient ease. 6. He will order the lieu-

tenant² to send¹⁸ soldiers as a relief to our men. 7. He ordered the lieutenant to send soldiers as a relief to our men. 8. The consul ought¹⁸ to send soldiers as a relief to us.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 3.² See 132.³ Why is the Subjunctive used? (136) Why the Imperfect Tense? (135)What question does *ut* — *relinqueret* answer? (136)⁴ See 67.⁵ *quem*; why is the Masculine Singular used? Why the Accusative?⁶ *ad pūgnam*, in battle.⁷ The subject of *erat* is the substantive clause *quod* — *poterant*.⁸ Is *mīlibus* used as a noun or as an adjective? (108); see also 54.⁹ *novissimis*, to the hindmost; lit., to the newest.¹⁰ *ex itinere*, on the march.¹¹ What is the other ending of the Perfect Indicative Active 3d Plural?¹² See 122.¹³ See 54.¹⁴ Sc. *esse*.¹⁵ See 122.¹⁶ See 128 and Ex. 8.¹⁷ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 2.¹⁸ See 136.

LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

139. Subjunctive of Result. A. & G. 319, *d*; 332, *a*; A. & S. 483; 494, *a*; 499, 1-3; G. 551; 552; 553, 1-4; H. 500, I., II.; 501, I., 1; 504.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Tantus timor exercitum occupāvit ut omnium mentēs perturbāret*, such fear seized the army THAT IT DISTURBED the minds of all.
2. *Dixit nōn sē tam barbarum esse ut nōn scīret*, he said he was not so uncivilized AS NOT TO KNOW.

3. *Fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur, it happened THAT THEY ROAMED ABOUT less extensively.*
4. *Retinērī nōn poterant quā tēla conicerent, they could not be prevented FROM HURLING weapons.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Militēs numerō¹ tam multī erant, ut āgminī² novissimō māgnō praesidiō² essent.³* 2. *His rēbus⁴ fiēbat⁵ ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent.* 3. *Ariovistus dixit nōn sē tam barbarum esse, ut nōn scīret bellō⁶ Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium nōn tulisse.* 4. *Tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs⁷ animōsque perturbāret.* 5. *Mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut⁸ facile perpaucī prohibēre possent.* 6. *Divicō respondit: Ita⁹ Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis institūtōs esse,¹⁰ utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint.¹¹* 7. *Ita diēs¹² circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum primum¹³ sex milia passuum interessent.* 8. *Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi¹⁴ spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus¹⁵ nōn vidērētur.* 9. *Germanī retinērī nōn poterant quā in nostrōs tēla coniicerent.*

Write in Latin.

1. Such fear seized the men that they all fled. 2. Such fear seizes the men that they all flee. 3. We are so many in number¹ that we can easily keep their¹⁷ army from the march.¹⁶ 4. For these reasons⁴ it happened that they easily kept our army from the march.¹⁶ 5. For these reasons it happens that they make war upon their neighbors. 6. They marched in such a manner that four miles intervened between their rear and our van.¹⁸

7. This man assumes¹⁸ such lofty airs that he does not seem endurable.¹⁵ 8. The lieutenant assumed such lofty airs that he did not seem endurable.¹⁵ 9. The Romans could not be prevented from making¹⁹ war upon their neighbors.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 194.² See 138.³ Why the *Imperfect*? (135)⁴ his *rēbus*, for these reasons; see 79.⁵ What is the subject of *fiēbat*?⁶ See 111.⁷ How do *mēns* and *animus* differ in signification? See GEN. VY.⁸ ut, so that.⁹ ita modifies *institūtōs esse*.¹⁰ *institūtōs esse* is object of *respondit*. (52)¹¹ See A. & G. 128, a: A. & S. 228, a, b: B. 116, 1: G. 131, 1: H. 235.¹² See 93.¹³ *primum*, sc. *āgmen*; render *van*.¹⁴ See 39.¹⁵ *ferendus*, endurable; lit. (one) to be endured.¹⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.¹⁸ to assume, *sibi sūmere*.¹⁹ See EXAMPLE 4.

LESSON LXXVI.

USE OF THE GENITIVE.

140. Genitive with Adjectives. A. & G. 218: A. & S. 359: B. 204, 1-3: G. 374: H. 399, I., 1-3.

141. Genitive in Predicate. A. & G. 214, c: A. & S. 357: B. 198, 3: G. 366: H. 401.

142. Genitive with certain Verbs. A. & G. 219: A. & S. 365: B. 205; 206: G. 376: H. 406, II.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quī rei (140) militāris peritissimus habēbātur, who was considered very skilful in military science.*

2. *Bellandī (140) cupidī, desirous of carrying on war.*

3. *Iūdicium imperātōris (141) est, the decision is THE GENERAL'S; or, belongs TO THE GENERAL.*
4. *Gallia est populi (141) Rōmānī, Gaul belongs TO THE Roman PEOPLE.*
5. *Reminiscātur pristinae virtūtis (142) Helvētiōrum, let him recollect THE former VALOR of the Helvetii.*
6. *Veteris contumēliae (142) obliviscī vult, he is willing to forget THE old INSULT.*

Analyze and parse.

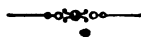
1. Lēgātus bellī perītus¹ habētur. 2. Lēgātus nītitur ut bellī perītus fiat.² 3. Nītēbātur ut reī militāris perītissimus fieret.³ 4. Pūblius Cōnsidius, qūī reī militāris perītissimus habēbātur et⁴ in exercitū Lūcī Sullae et postea in Mārcei Crassī⁴ fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur. 5. Ariovistus dīxit sē nōn tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret⁶ Aeduōs auxiliō⁷ populī Rōmānī nōn ūsōs esse.⁸ 6. Militēs hortābor, ut glōriae semper memorēs sint. 7. Nōs monuit ut virtūtis semper memorēs essēmus. 8. Quā dē causā⁹ hominēs bellandī¹⁰ cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. 9. Dīcit ipsum esse Dumnorigem cupidum novārum rērum. 10. Dīcunt dē summā bellī¹¹ iūdicium imperātōris esse¹² sē exīstimāvisse.¹² 11. Neque iūdicat Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. 12. Militum est fortiter pūgnāre;¹³ imperātōris est imperāre. 13. Divicō Caesarem hortātur ut reminiscātur et¹⁴ veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 14. Caesar recentium iniūriārum obliviscī nōn vult.¹⁵ 15. Omnis contumēliae obliviscāmur.

Write in Latin.

1. I am not considered very skilful in war.¹⁶ 2. I shall strive to become² skilful in war. 3. This lieu-

tenant, who had been in Sulla's army and afterwards in Caesar's and was considered skilful in battle, was sent forward with soldiers. 4. These soldiers are very desirous of carrying on war.¹⁶ 5. The decision concerning the general management¹¹ of affairs belongs¹⁷ to the consul. 6. This house is Caesar's. 7. We ought to forget insults.¹⁸ 8. Let us forget all wrongs.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 64.² See 126 and 136.³ Why Imperfect? (135)⁴ in *Mārci Crassi*, sc. *exercitū*; translate, *in that of Marcus Crassus*.⁵ et connects *habēbātur* and *fuerat*. ⁶ See 139 and Ex. 2.⁷ See 104.⁸ *ūsōs esse* depends upon *sciret*.⁹ *quā dē causā*, for this reason.¹⁰ *bellandī* is a Gerund; parse it like a noun.¹¹ *dē summā belli*, concerning the general management of the war.¹² *esse* depends upon *existimāvisse*; *existimāvisse* upon *dīcunt*.¹³ See 129.¹⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.¹⁵ See 125.¹⁶ See 140.¹⁷ See Ex. 3.¹⁸ See 149.

LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

143. A. & G. 304-308: A. & S. 476, *a*, *b*; 477: B. 301-304: G. 589; 590; 594-597: H. 506; 507, I.-III.; 508-510.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī vincit, laetātur*, if he is conquering, he is rejoicing.
2. *Sī vincet, laetābitur*, if he conquers (shall conquer), he will rejoice.
3. *Sī vicerit, laetābitur*, if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will rejoice.
4. *Sī vincat, laetētur*, if he should conquer, he would rejoice.

5. *Sī vinceret, laetārētur, if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.*
 6. *Sī vicisset, laetātus esset, if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Sī pūgnat, vincit.* 2. *Sī pūgnābit, vincet.* 3. *Sī pūgnāverit, vincet.* 4. *Sī pūgnēt, vincat.* 5. *Sī pūgnāret, vinceret.* 6. *Sī pūgnāvisset, vicisset.* 7. *Sī Helvētiī Allobrogibus¹ satisfaciēt, cum iīs pācem faciam.* 8. *Sī Helvētiī Allobrogibus satisfaciāt, cum iīs pācem faciam.* 9. *Caesar dīcit sī Helvētiī Allobrogibus satisfaciāt, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.²* 10. *Sī quid³ vultis,¹⁰ revertimini.⁴* 11. *Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt¹¹ Helvētiī ubi eōs esse volueris.⁵* 12. *Sīn bellō⁶ persequī⁷ persevērābis,⁸ reminiscere⁴ et veteris incommodī⁹ populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.* 13. *Sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellem,¹⁰ num¹² etiam recentium iniūriārum memoriā dēpōnere⁷ possem?* 14. *Sī id fiet, prōvinciae¹³ periculōsum erit.* • 15. *Caesar dīcit sī nēmō¹⁴ sequātur, sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum esse.¹¹*

Write in Latin.

1. If he is satisfying the Aedui,¹ he is rejoicing. 2. If he satisfies the Aedui, he will rejoice. 3. If he should satisfy the Aedui, he would rejoice. 4. If he were satisfying the Aedui, he would be rejoicing. 5. If he had satisfied the Aedui, he would have rejoiced. 6. If you wish anything,³ ask. 7. If they make peace with us, we shall go into that part where they wish⁵ us to be. 8. But if they persist in pursuing⁸ us with war,⁶ let them recall to mind¹⁵ our former valor.⁹ 9. If we were willing to

forget the old misfortune, could we also get rid of the remembrance of recent insults?

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See 132.
- ² esse factūrum = factūrum esse.
- ³ See 116 and Ex. 6.
- ⁴ See 47.
- ⁵ What does the Future Perfect Tense denote? (42)
- ⁶ See 54.
- ⁷ See 69.
- ⁸ persequi perseverō, *I persist in pursuing.*
- ⁹ See 142.
- ¹⁰ See 125.
- ¹¹ See 126.
- ¹² What answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.
- ¹³ See 36.
- ¹⁴ The Genitive and Ablative of nēmō are rare: these cases are supplied by nullius and nullō (from nullus, 24).
- ¹⁵ See 134.

LESSON LXXVIII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

144. Ablative expressing Measure (Degree) of Difference. A. & G. 250: A. & S. 415: B. 223: G. 403: H. 423.

144, a. Ablative of Quality. A. & G. 251: A. & S. 411: B. 224: G. 400: H. 419, II. This is called sometimes the *Ablative of Characteristic*, sometimes the *Descriptive Ablative*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Alterum iter multō (144) expeditius erat, *the other route was MUCH more passable.*
2. Mātūrius paulō (144) domum contendit, *he hastens home A LITTLE sooner.*
3. Ipsum Dumnorigem, summā audāciā (144, a), *Dumnorix himself, (a man) OF THE GREATEST BOLDNESS.*
4. Summā hūmānitāte (144, a) adolēscēns, *a youth OF THE HIGHEST CULTURE.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Caesar multō gravius queritur.¹ 2. Multō māior alacritās exercituī² iniecta est. 3. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram erat, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit. 4. Caesar unā aestāte³ duōbus māximīs bellis⁴ cōfectīs mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in⁵ Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit. 5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant,⁶ facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant.⁷ 6. Reliquum spatium mōns continet māgnā altitudīne, ita, ut rādīcēs⁸ mōntis ex utrāque parte⁹ rīpae¹⁰ flūminis contingant.¹¹ 7. Galli ingentī māgnitūdīne corporum Germānōs,¹² incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse¹³ praedicābant. 8. Commodissimum vīsum est¹⁴ Gāium Valerium Procilum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adolēscētem, ad eum mittere. 9. Reperit ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audaciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālītatem grātiā, cupidum¹⁵ rērum¹⁶ novārum.

Write in Latin.

1. He censures the soldiers much more severely. 2. He censured me a little more severely than the remaining soldiers. 3. The route through our province is much more practicable than through the territory of the Sequani. 4. The lieutenant led his army into winter-quarters among⁵ the Aedui a little sooner than the time of year demanded. 5. We shall none the less attempt to do that which we have resolved (to do). 6. Caius is a youth of extraordinary valor. 7. We have seen mountains of great height. 8. It seemed¹⁴ most suitable to send to him Titus, a youth of extraordinary practice in arms.

¹ See 108.
² See 67.
³ See 111.
⁴ See 199.
⁵ in, among.
⁶ cōstituerant, sc. facere.
⁷ ut — excaut is an appositive to id; for the mood, see 139; translate,
to go forth.
⁸ See 34.
⁹ ex utrâque parte, on each side.
¹⁰ See 39.
¹¹ See 139.
¹² See 53.
¹³ See 59.
¹⁴ What is the subject of visum est? (129)
¹⁵ See 64.
¹⁶ See 140.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

145. A. & G. 313, *a-e*: A. & S. 478-480; 510 (2): B. 306, *a-5*; G. 603-607; H. 514; 515. I.-III.

1. **Cum pugnātum sit**, *although they fought*; lit., *it was fought*.
2. **Licet victoriā gloriētur**, *although he glories in victory*.
3. **Quamvis careret nōmine**, *although he was without the name*.
4. **Etsi vidēbat**, **tamen nōn putābat**, *although he saw, yet he did not think*.

1. Cum fortiter pūgnent, tamen nōn vincent. 2. Cum Sēquanī Rōmānīs¹ satisfēcērint, tamen lēgātus pācem cum iīs nōn facit. 3. Cum ea² ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur,³ cum iīs pācem faciat.³ 4. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,⁴ cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit,⁵ āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. 5. Licet⁶ mē hortētur, nōn pūgnābō. 6. Licet mīles volnerātus sit, tamen laetātur. 7. Licet Helvētīī suā victōriā⁷

glōrientur, tamen iter facient nōn per nostram prōvinciam. 8. Erat dignitāte⁸ rēgiā, quamvis careret nōmine.⁹ 9. Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen eo¹⁰ exercitum addūxit. 10. Nam etsi sine ūllō periculō legiōnis¹¹ dēlēctae cum equitatū proelium fore¹² vidēbat, tamen committendum¹³ nōn putābat. 11. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, uti inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnīs¹⁴ aut sēnīs milibus¹⁵ passuum interesset.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer. 2. Although these things are so, yet we shall make peace with them. 3. No one fled in this whole battle, although they fought from the fifth hour till sunset. 4. We cannot see the mountain, although it is of great height.⁸ 5. The lieutenant did not lead his army into winter-quarters, although the summer was almost gone. 6. He thinks that he ought to begin¹³ battle, although he sees that it will not be without danger to the legions.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 132.

² See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

³ See LN. LXXVII., Ex. 4. What is the force of this conditional clause? (143)

⁴ See 111.

⁵ See Ex. 1.

⁶ *hōet* is properly an Impersonal Verb (128), Present Tense, with *ut* (*that*) omitted; hence it is followed only by the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive. (135) What is the literal translation?

⁷ See 79.

⁸ See 144, a.

⁹ See Ex. 3.

¹⁰ *eo*, *thither*.

¹¹ A. & G. 217: A. & S. 353 (2): B. 200: G. 363, 2: H. 396, III.

¹² *fore* = *futūrum esse*. (62)

¹³ *committendum*, sc. *esse*; see 130.

¹⁴ *quīnīs*, etc., *than five*, etc., *each day*.

¹⁵ See 133.

¹⁶ See 139.

LESSON LXXX.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

146. Ablative of Price. A. & G. 252: A. & S. 408: B. 225: G. 404: H. 422. This answers such questions as *For how much? At what price?*

147. Ablative of Distance. A. & G. 257, *b*: A. & S. 423, *b*: G. 335, 2: H. 379, 2. This answers the question *How far?*

148. Ablative with Adjectives. A. & G. 245, *a*: A. & S. 418: B. 226, 2: G. 374, NOTES 1-4: H. 421, III.

EXAMPLES.

1. Domum duobus talentis (146) emit, he bought a house FOR TWO TALENTS.
2. Oppidum parvō pretiō (146) vēdidit, he sold the town AT A SMALL PRICE.
3. Milibus (147) passuum quattuor et vīginti absunt, they are TWENTY-FOUR MILES distant.
4. Dignus est maioribus (148), he is worthy OF (his) ANCESTORS.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hic¹ mercēde puerōs et puellās docet. 2. Vīginti talentis unam orātiōnem Isocratēs vēdidit. 3. Vēdidit hic aurō patriam. 4. Victōria nōbis² multō sanguine stetit.³ 5. Vereor nē victōria iis multō sanguine stet.⁴ 6. Cum Rōmānī vicerint,⁵ tamen victōria iis multō sanguine stetit. 7. Septimō diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus⁶ est Ariovistī cōpiās⁷ ā nostris⁸ milibus passuum quattuor et vīginti abesse.⁹ 8. Hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ab castris Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. 9. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equis¹⁰ dēvēxerat, passibus ducentis

ab eō tumulō cōstituit. 10. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervallō cōstitērunt.¹¹ 11. Eōdem diē castra prēmōvit et milibus pāssuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub mōnte cōsēdit. 12. Hī puerī patribus indīgnī sunt. 13. Hic imperātor immortalitāte dīgnus est. 14. Licet¹² hī militēs fortissimī sint, tamen māiōribus indīgnī sunt. 15. Puerum hortēmur ut māiōribus dīgnus sit.¹³ 16. Nūlla vox est ab iīs audīta populī Rōmānī māiestāte et superiōribus victōriis indīgna.

Write in Latin.

1. This man¹ will teach for wages. 2. I shall sell my house at a small price. 3. He is by no means rich, although he sells² houses at a large price. 4. I fear that I shall not sell⁴ my house at a large price. 5. We are about fifteen miles from the city. 6. We shall station the third legion three hundred paces from the hill. 7. He will station his cavalry at nearly an equal distance from the same place. 8. We shall move forward our camp on the same day, and encamp at the foot of a mountain ten miles from Geneva. 9. I fear that these girls are not worthy of their mother. 10. Let us urge the soldiers to be¹³ worthy of their country.

Notes.

¹ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

² See 39.

³ See GEN. VY. under *st5*.

⁴ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁵ See 145.

⁶ See LN. LXVIII., EX. 2.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ Sc. *cōpila*.

⁹ *abesse* depends upon the idea of saying contained in *ab — factus est*, *he was informed by scouts that*, etc., i. e. who said that, etc.

¹⁰ *equis*, on horseback; see 54.

¹¹ See *cōsistō*, GEN. VY.

¹² See LN. LXXIX., NOTE 6.

¹³ See 136.

LESSON LXXXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

149. A. & G. 321, *a, b, c*; 326: A. & S. 500 (2) *b*; 510 (2); 519: B. 285; 286, 1-3: G. 538-541; 586; 633: H. 516, I, II.; 517.

EXAMPLES.

1. Cum impetūs sustinēre nōn possent, alterī sē in mōntem recēpērunt, *since they could not withstand the attacks, one party withdrew upon the mountain.*
2. Caesar iniūriam faciēbat quī vēctīgālia dōteriōra faceret, *Caesar was doing wrong because he was making the revenues decrease.*
3. Aedui questī sunt quod Harūdēs finēs eōrum populārentur, *the Aedui complained because (as they said) the Harudes were laying waste their territory.*
4. Quod ā Bibracte aberat, rei frūmentāriāe prōspiciendum existimāvit, *because he was distant from Bibracte, he thought that he must look out for supplies.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Perfacile est, cum virtūte¹ omnibus praestētis, tōtīus Galliae imperiō² potiri.³ 2. Orgētorix dixit perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiri. 3. Cum māgnā ex parte⁴ eōrum precibus⁵ adductus bellum susceperit, queritur. 4. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci. 5. Diūtius⁶ cum nostrōrum⁷ impetūs sustinēre nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant,⁸ in mōntem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. 6. In finēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt cum propter volnera militum nostrī trīdūm morāti eōs sequi nōn potuissent. 7. Ariovistus dixit māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī

suō adventū vētigālia dēteriōra⁹ faceret. 8. Graviter eōs accūsāt quod ab iīs nōn sublevētur. 9. Multō¹⁰ etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur. 10. Propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septemtriōnibus posita est,¹¹ frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. 11. Eō autem frūmentō,² quod¹² flūmine Arare nāvibus¹³ subvēxerat, propterea minus ūtī¹⁴ poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat.¹⁵ 12. Quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus¹⁶ passuum octōdecim aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum¹⁷ existimāvit: iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte¹⁸ ire contendit.

Write in Latin.

1. Since we excel the Romans in valor, it will be very easy to get possession of their government. 2. Since they fight more bravely than the Gauls¹⁹ they will easily conquer. 3. We are fleeing, since we cannot longer withstand their attacks. 4. Since they cannot longer withstand the attack of the enemy, one party withdraws upon a mountain, the other betakes itself to the baggage. 5. He complained because (as he said) he could not use the corn. 6. He complains because (as he says) he has sold his house at a small price.²⁰ 7. Because Germany is placed towards the north the cold there is great. 8. We shall march through Geneva at sunset,²¹ because we are not more than twenty miles distant.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 124.

² See 104.

³ See 129.

⁴ *māgnā ex parte, in great part.*

⁵ See 79.

⁶ *Diūtius* modifies *sustinēre*.

⁷ The *Possessive Pronouns*, like the Demonstrative, are often used substantively. See LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

⁸ What kind of a verb is *cooperant*? (127)

⁹ See Ex. 2.

¹⁰ See 144.

¹¹ Of what does *quod* — *posita est* express the cause?

¹² See 115 and 34.

¹³ See 54.

¹⁴ See 69.

¹⁵ See 125.

¹⁶ See 133.

¹⁷ See Ex. 4.

¹⁸ See 105.

¹⁹ *Than the Gauls, quam Galli.*

²⁰ See 146.

²¹ See 111.



LESSON LXXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

150. A. & G. 323; 325; 327; 328: A. & S. 502; 503; 505; 509, a: B. 287; 288, A, B; 291; 292: G. 568-572; 574; 577; 578; 579: H. 519, I., II., 1, 2; 520, I., 1, 2, II.; 521, I., II., 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Cum lēgātī mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvīt, when ambassadors were sent, Ariovistus demanded.*
2. *Prīusquam quidquam cōnārētur Divitiacum vocat,¹ before he attempted anything he summoned Divitiacus.*
3. *Dum haec geruntur Caesarī nūntiātum est, while these things were taking place it was reported to Caesar.*
4. *Nōn expectandum sibi statuit dum pervenirent, he decided that he ought not to wait until they should arrive.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentīs castrisque nostrī³ potītī sunt.*
2. *Cum trīdūī viam⁴ prōcessisset, nūntiātum est⁵ ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs contendere.*
3. *Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō⁶ exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā,⁷ Lūcium Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.*
4. *Cum²⁰ hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū⁸ pulsa⁹ atque*

in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum³ nostram aciem premēbant. 5. Itaque priusquam quidquam cōnārētur Divitiacum ad sē vocārī iubet.¹ 6. Postquam id animum advertit cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit. 7. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit obsidēs, arma, servōs¹⁰ poposcit. 8. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur,¹¹ Caesarī nūntiātum est⁵ equitēs Ariovistī lapidēs tēlaque¹² in nostrōs conicere. 9. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs¹³ imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum¹⁴ sumptūrum.¹⁵ 10. Quibus¹⁶ rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum¹⁷ sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnis¹⁸ sociōrum cōsumptīs, in Santonōs Helvētīū pervenīrent.

Write in Latin.

1. When ambassadors were sent to Caesar, he demanded corn of them.¹⁹ 2. When they had proceeded a three days' march,⁴ they pitched (their) camp. 3. Before they attempted to set out they summoned a council. 4. After the general arrived in the territory of the Aedui he demanded corn, wagons, and¹⁰ horses. 5. Although we had routed the enemy's line on the right wing, on the left he was pressing furiously upon us. 6. While the troops are assembling we are waiting. 7. We shall remain in the city until the troops assemble. 8. Influenced by these¹⁶ affairs, we decided that we ought¹⁷ not to wait until the enemy should lay waste our fields.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 276, d: A. & S. 466: B. 259, 3: G. 229: H. 467, III.

² See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

³ See LN. LXXXI., NOTE 7.

⁴ See 109.

⁵ What is the subject of nūntiātum est? (129)

⁶ See 107.

⁷ See 111.

⁸ *ā sinistrō cornū, on the left wing.* ⁹ *pulsa, sc. esset.*

¹⁰ When several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin language either omits the conjunction altogether, or repeats it : e. g. either *obsidēs, arma, servōs*; or *obsidēs et arma et servōs*; NOT *obsidēs, arma et servōs*.

¹¹ A. & G. 276, c: A. & S. 468: B. 293, I.: G. 229, REMARK: H. 467, III., 4.

¹² An enclitic throws its accent back upon the final syllable of the word to which it is attached : *tēlāque*.

¹³ *Sc. convenire.*

¹⁴ *ad dēliberandum, for deliberating.*

¹⁵ *sūptūrum, sc. esse.*

¹⁶ The Latin often employs a relative where the English prefers a demonstrative : *quae rēs, THESE affairs.*

¹⁷ *expectandum, sc. esse.* See 130 and 131.

¹⁸ See 122.

¹⁹ See 71 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

²⁰ See 145.

LESSON LXXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

151. The Indirect Question. A. & G. 334, w. preceding NOTE: A. & S. 518: B. 300: G. 452, 2; 467: H. 528, 2, NOTE; 529, I.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quid sui cōsili¹ sit ostendit, he shows what his plan is.*
2. *Causa quae esset quaesivit, he asked what the cause was.*
3. *Ariovistō mirum visum est quid in Galliā Caesarī negōtī¹ esset, Ariovistus wondered what business Caesar had in Gaul.*

Analyse and parse.

1. *Quālis esset nātūra mōntis, quī² cōgnōscerent,³ misit.*
2. *Dicit intelligere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit.*
3. *Ex quō iūdicārī potest,⁴ quantum habeat in sē bonī¹ cōstantia.*
4. *Dumnorigī custōdēs pōnit,⁵ ut, quae agat, quibuscum⁶ loquātur, scire possit.*
5. *Ario-*

vistus dixit sibi mīrum vidēri,⁷ quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō⁸ vicisset,⁹ aut Caesari¹⁰ aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō¹⁰ negōtī¹ esset. 6. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit incrēdibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem¹¹ fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. 7. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem¹² facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat¹³ praemittit, quī videant,³ quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. 8. Caesar vehementer eōs incūsāvit quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō¹⁴ dūcerentur,¹⁵ sibi quaerendum¹⁶ aut cōgitandum putārent.¹⁷ 9. Caesar dixit dē quartā vigiliā sē castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intelligere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium, an timor valēret. 10. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō⁸ nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiebat causam.

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed.
2. We shall send (men) to ascertain⁸ in what direction the river flows.
3. It cannot be determined in what direction the river flows.
4. Labienus sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy had fled.
5. Liscus censures them severely because (as he says) they think¹⁷ they ought to ask¹⁶ in what direction they are to be led.
6. We shall break up camp in the first watch, that we may be able to know as soon as possible whether our soldiers are brave or cowardly.
7. We shall place guards over him,⁵ that we may know with⁶ whom he speaks.
8. The general placed guards over the soldiers, that he might be able to ascertain what they were doing.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ *quid sui cōsili*, what his plan; lit., what of his plan. See A. & G. 216: A. & S. 354: B. 201: G. 367; 369: H. 396, IV.
- ² *qui*, sc. *virōs* as antecedent. ⁸ See 136 and Ex. 10.
- ⁴ What is the subject of *potest*?
- ⁵ *Dumnorigi* — *pōnit*, he places guards over (lit. for) *Dumnoriz*.
- ⁶ See LN. LIX., NOTE 1.
- ⁷ *sibi* — *vidēri*, he wondered; lit., it seemed to him wonderful; for *sibi*, see 39.
- ⁸ *bellō*, in war; see 54. ⁹ *vicisset*, translate by the Indicative.
- ¹⁰ See 137. ¹¹ *in utram partem*, in which direction.
- ¹² How does *idem* differ in meaning from *idem*?
- ¹³ *coactum habēbat*, he had collected. A. & G. 292, c: A. & S. 547, c: B. 337, 6: G. 238: H. 388, 1, NOTE.
- ¹⁴ See 79. ¹⁵ *dūcerentur*, they were to be led.
- ¹⁶ *quaerendum*, sc. *esse*: see 130. ¹⁷ See 149 and Ex. 3.

LESSON LXXXIV.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

152. A. & G. 335, REM.; 336; 339: A. & S. 515; 516: B. 313; 314: G. 648-650: H. 522; 523, I., II., 1, 2, III.; 524.

EXAMPLE.

Oratio Recta, Direct Discourse.

Ob eam rem ex civitate profūgī et Rōmam vēnī, quod neque iūre-iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar.

I fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because *I* was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages.

Oratio Obliqua, Indirect Discourse.

Locutus est Divitiacus: ob eam rem *se* ex civitate profūgt~~se~~ et Rōmam vēnt~~se~~, quod neque iūre-iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēr~~etur~~.

Divitiacus said: *he* fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because *he* was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages.

Analyze and parse.

1. Diviciō respondit : Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere,¹ nōn dare cōnsuērint²; ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. 2. Lēgātī dixerunt sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. 3. Locūtus est prō hīs Divitiacus Aeduus : Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās : hārum³ alterius⁴ principātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. 4. Dixit hōrum⁵ primō circiter milia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsisse : posteaquā agrōs et cultum et cōpiās⁶ Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs⁷ plūrēs¹¹ nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī milium numerum. 5. Dixit cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs⁸ contendisse ; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs⁹ accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum⁹ amīsisse. 6. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rerum³ facere, quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs capite¹⁰ dēmissō terram intuerī.

Notes.

¹ See 69.² See 139 and LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.³ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.⁴ *alterius* modifies *factiōnis* understood.⁵ *cōpiās*, *wealth*.⁷ See 54.⁹ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 10.¹¹ *plūs* is declined as follows :⁶ *trāductōs*, sc. *esse*.⁸ See *pellō*.¹⁰ See 129.

	N.		M. and F.	N.
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> plūs,	PLUR.	plūrēs,	plūra,
	<i>Gen.</i> plūris,		plūrium,	plūrium,
	<i>Dat.</i> ———		plūribus,	plūribus,
	<i>Acc.</i> plūs,		plūrēs,	plūra,
	<i>Abl.</i> ———		plūribus,	plūribus.

LESSON LXXXV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

EXAMPLE.

Direct Discourse.

SI
pācem populus Rōmānus cum
Helvētiīs **faciet**, in eam partem
ibunt atque ibi **erunt** Helvē-
tiī, ubi eōs **tū** cōstitu-
eris atque esse **volueris**; sīn
bellō persequi perseverābis, re-
miniscere et veteris incom-
modi populi Rōmāni et pristinae
virtutis Helvētiōrum.

If the Roman people
shall make peace with the
Helvetii, the Helvetii **will** go
into that part and stay where
you shall have determined and
wished that they should be;
but if **you shall** persist in
continuing war, recollect the
old misfortune of the Roman
people and former valor of the
Helvetii.

Indirect Discourse.

Is ita cum Caesare egit: SI
pācem populus Rōmānus cum
Helvētiīs **faceret**, in eam partem
itūrōs atque ibi **futūrōs** Helvē-
tiōs, ubi eōs **Caesar** cōstitu-
isset atque esse **voluisset**; sīn
bellō persequi perseverā**ret**, re-
minisc**erētur** et veteris incom-
modi populi Rōmāni et pristinae
virtutis Helvētiōrum.

*He treated with Caesar as fol-
lows:* If the Roman people
should make peace with the
Helvetii, the Helvetii **would** go
into that part and stay where
Caesar should have determined
and wished that they should be;
but if **he should** persist in con-
tinuing war, **let him** recollect
the old misfortune of the Roman
people and former valor of the
Helvetii.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ariovistus multa¹ praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum
sēsē nōn suā sponte,² sed rogātum³ et arcessitum³ ā
Gallis; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiis⁴ domum
propinquōsque reliquisse: sēdēs habēre⁵ in Galliā ab

ipsis⁶ concessās,⁷ obsidēs ipsōrum⁷ voluntāte² datōs; stipendium capere⁵ iūre⁸ bellī, quod⁹ victōrēs victīs¹⁰ impōnere cōsuērunt.¹¹ 2. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō¹² sibi minus dubitātiōnis¹³ dari, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētīī commemorāssent,¹¹ memoriā¹⁴ tenēret, atque eō¹⁵ gravius ferre, quō¹⁵ minus meritō⁸ populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī¹⁶ alicūius iniūriae¹⁷ sibi¹⁸ cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre¹⁹; sed eō¹² dēceptum,²⁰ quod neque commīssum²¹ ā sē intelligeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum²² putāret.

Notes.

¹ A. & G. 188 : A. & S. 438 (3) : B. 236 : G. 204, NOTE 2 : H. 441.

² See 79.

³ See 121 and Exs. 3 and 4.

⁴ Translate as if *spē māgnōrum praemiōrum*. See A. & G. p. 428, Hendiadys : B. 374, 4 : G. 698 : H. 636, III., 2.

⁵ *habēre, capere*, sc. *sē*.

⁶ *ipsis*, sc. *Gallis*.

⁷ *concessās*, from *concedō*; *ipsōrum*, *their own*.

⁸ The *Ablative of Cause* often designates that *in accordance with* which anything is done : *iūre*, *in accordance with the law*.

⁹ See 115.

¹⁰ A. & G. 188 : A. & S. 438 (2) : B. 236 : G. 204, NOTE 2 : H. 441, 1; this rule includes Participles and Pronouns. For the *case* of *victis*, see 67.

¹¹ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

¹² *eō*, *for this reason*.

¹³ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

¹⁴ See 54.

¹⁵ See GEN. VY. under *eō*.

¹⁶ *quī sī*, *if they*.

¹⁷ See 140.

¹⁸ See 86; translate, *on their part*.

¹⁹ See 129.

²⁰ *dēceptum*, sc. *esse sē*.

²¹ *commīssum*, sc. *esse aliquid*.

²² *timendum*, sc. *sibi esse*, and see 130.

LESSON LXXXVI.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

TABLE showing the Changes made in Moods and Tenses when
Direct Discourse becomes Indirect.

I. Moods.

1. Principal Clauses : Statements.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.	INDIRECT DISCOURSE.
<i>Indicative</i>	becomes <i>Infinitive</i> .

2. Principal Clauses : Commands or Prohibitions.

<i>Imperative</i>	becomes <i>Subjunctive</i> .
<i>Subjunctive</i>	remains <i>Subjunctive</i> .

3. Subordinate Clauses of All Kinds.

<i>Indicative</i>	becomes <i>Subjunctive</i> .
<i>Subjunctive</i>	remains <i>Subjunctive</i> .

II. Tenses.

1. When an Indicative or a Subjunctive of Direct Discourse passes into a Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse.

<i>Present</i> } . . . become	{ <i>Present</i> , often <i>Imperfect</i> , when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; <i>Imperfect</i> , sometimes <i>Present</i> , when made dependent upon an Historical Tense.
<i>Future</i> }	
<i>Perfect</i> } . . . become	{ <i>Perfect</i> , often <i>Pluperfect</i> , when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; <i>Pluperfect</i> , sometimes <i>Perfect</i> , after an Historical Tense.
<i>Future-Perfect</i> }	
<i>Imperfect</i>	remains <i>Imperfect</i> .
<i>Pluperfect</i>	remains <i>Pluperfect</i> .

2. When an Indicative of Direct Discourse passes into an Infinitive of Indirect Discourse.

<i>Present</i>	remains <i>Present</i> .
<i>Future or Future-Perfect</i> . . .	becomes <i>Future Participle</i> with <i>esse</i> .
<i>Perfect</i> }	become <i>Perfect</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> }	
<i>Pluperfect</i> }	

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar replies: The Romans have been so trained up by their fathers that they do not give¹ hostages. 2. He informs Caesar (that) the Helvetii are marching through the province because they have no other way. 3. He says (that) the Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 4. We shall say many² (things): (that) we did not cross the Rhone of our own free will, but because³ we had been invited³ by the Sequani; we did not set out from home⁴ without great rewards; we have among the Helvētīi large possessions, granted to us with their own⁵ consent;⁶ we levied tribute on the conquered⁷ in accordance with the law⁸ of war. 5. You said (that) you remembered those things which the Sequani had called to mind; that you had been deceived for this reason,⁹ that¹⁰ you had neither done anything for which¹¹ you should fear, nor did you think (that) you ought to fear¹² without a reason.

Notes.

¹ See 139.² See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.³ See 121 and Ex. 3.⁴ See 107.⁵ *their own, ipsōrum.*⁶ See 79.⁷ See 67 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.⁸ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.⁹ *for this reason, eō.*¹⁰ *that, quod.*¹¹ *for which, quārē.*¹² See 130 and 131.

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE GERUND.

153. The Gerund. A. & G. 295: A. & S. 548 (1): B. 338, 1-4: G. 425; 426: H. 541; 542, I-IV.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcit**, *he gave the enemy an opportunity* FOR FIGHTING.
2. **Bellandī cupidī**, *fond* OF CARRYING ON WAR.
3. **Diem ad dēliberandum sūmet**, *he will take a day for* DELIBERATING.
4. **Reperiēbat in quaerendō**, *he found on* INQUIRING.
5. **Studium pūgnandī**, *a desire* FOR FIGHTING.

Analyze and parse.¹

1. Quā dē causā hominēs bellandī² cupidī māgnō dolōre³ afficiēbantur. 2. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōstituērunt ea, quae ad profici-scendum pertinērent,⁴ comparāre. 3. Caesar lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum.⁵ 4. Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar initium ēius fugae factum⁶ ā Dumnorige atque ēius equitibus. 5. Caesar Divitiacum cōnsōlātus rogat, finem ōrandī faciat.⁶ 6. Ariovistus, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret,⁷ liberālitate⁸ senātus ea praemia cōsecūtus est. 7. Caesar loquendī finem facit sēque ad suōs⁹ recipit, suisque imperāvit nē quod¹⁰ omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reīcerent. 8. Multō¹¹ māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī iniectum est. 9. Proximō diē Caesar aciem instrūxit hostibusque¹² pūgnandī potestātem fēcit.¹³ 10. Ita nostrī⁹ ācritē in hostēs signō¹⁴ datō

impetum fecerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur.¹⁵

Write in Latin.

1. He says the Romans were fond of carrying on war. 2. We shall take ten days for deliberating. 3. We shall ask them to make⁶ an end of entreating. 4. A much greater desire for carrying on war was infused into all of us.¹⁶ 5. They gave us an opportunity for strengthening peace with them. 6. We shall give them an opportunity for strengthening peace and friendship with us. 7. You will find on inquiring (that) we do not easily keep the enemy from our towns. 8. They said you would find on inquiring (that) they do not easily keep the enemy from their cities. 9. We made an end of speaking and betook ourselves to our (friends). 10. Although we had no just cause for asking, we obtained many things¹⁷ by reason of your generosity.⁸

Notes.

¹ Parse the Gerunds like nouns. ² See 140.

³ A. & G. 248, R.; A. & S. 410 (1); B. 220, 1; G. 399; H. 419, III.

⁴ A. & G. 320; A. & S. 500 (2), (d); B. 283; G. 631; H. 503, I.

⁵ esse is often omitted from the compound forms of the Infinitive.

⁶ See 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3; ut, as here, is sometimes omitted.

⁷ See 145.

⁸ See 79.

⁹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

¹⁰ See 116, second part.

¹¹ See 144.

¹² See 39.

¹³ See EXAMPLE 1.

¹⁴ See 122 and Ex. 2, b.

¹⁵ See 139.

¹⁶ all of us, omnibus nobis; see 67.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

154. The Gerundive. A. & G. 296: A. & S. 548 (2); 550: B. 339: G. 427: H. 543, and NOTE; 544.

EXAMPLES.

1. Ad minuendam grātiā, *for DIMINISHING popularity.*
2. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur, *Orgetorix is chosen to EXECUTE these plans.*
3. Spem rēgnī obtinendī, *the hope OF OBTAINING the sovereignty.*
4. Datā facultāte itineris faciendī, *if an opportunity for marching should be granted.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quibus opibus¹ ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam² grātiā,³ sed paene ad perniciem suam ūteretur.⁴ 2. Ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est. 3. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt. 4. In Galliā ab hīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, rēgna occupābantur. 5. Ea, quae ad effeminandōs animōs pertinent, important. 6. Decima legiō sē esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. 7. Ariovistus dīxit omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse. 8. Frumentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant,⁵ combūrunt, ut domum⁶ reditiōnis spē⁷ sublātā⁸ parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent. 9. Liscus dīcit sī quid accidat⁹ Rōmānīs, summam in spem¹⁰ per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī Dumnorigem venīre. 10. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā¹¹ summa alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est. 11. Neque hominēs inimicō animō,¹² datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs¹³ ab iniuriā et

maleficiō exīstimāvit. 12. Hōc proeliō factō reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset,¹⁴ pōntem in Arare faciendum cūrat¹⁵ atque ita exercitum trādūcit.

Write in Latin.

1. We consider two days sufficient for collecting the men. 2. They thought five days were sufficient for destroying the city. 3. We entertain¹⁰ the highest hope of establishing friendship with all. 4. He says he entertains the highest hope of establishing friendship with the Gauls, if anything happens⁹ to us. 5. An opportunity for marching through entire Gaul was granted the Romans. 6. A very great desire for obtaining the sovereignty was infused into Dumnorix. 7. Let us not import¹⁶ those things which tend to enervate the mind. 8. Let us do that which tends to strengthen peace with all men. 9. Caesar said that entire Germany had come to attack him. 10. We shall burn up our villages, that we may be more ready to endure all perils.

Notes.

¹ See 104.

² Translate the Gerundives like Gerunds (see Ex. 1); parse them like adjectives.

³ grātiam, sc. suam.

⁴ ūterētur, translate by the Indicative.

⁵ See LN. LXX., Ex. 2.

⁶ See 105; domum limits the idea of motion in the verbal noun reditiōnis.

⁷ See 129.

⁸ From tollō.

⁹ accidat, translate by the Indicative; why is it in the Subjunctive? (159).

¹⁰ in spem veniō, I entertain the hope.

¹¹ See LN. LXIV., NOTE 2.

¹² See 144, a.

¹³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

¹⁴ See 136.

¹⁵ pōntem — cūrat, he attends to building a bridge over the Saône; lit., he cares for a bridge to be built, etc. How is Saône pronounced?

¹⁶ See 134.

LESSON LXXXIX.

THE SUPINE.

155. The Supine. A. & G. 302; 303: A. & S. 554 (2); 555: B. 340, 1, 2: G. 434-436: H. 546-547.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, they send legates to ask for aid.*
2. *Perfacile factū, very easy to do.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Aeduī cum sē suaque¹ ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent,² lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 2. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs³ cīvitatū, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt. 3. Lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēvirīs veniēbant; Aeduī⁴ questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent,⁵ finēs eōrum populārentur²; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse. 4. Divitiacus dixit ob eam rem sē ex cīvitatē profūgissee et Rōmam⁶ ad senātum vēnissee auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre-iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. 5. Liscus dicit Dumnorigem ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātře⁷ et propīnquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitatēs conlocāssee. 6. Hostis⁸ est uxor invīta⁹ quae ad virum nūptum datur. 7. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cō-nāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitatīs imperium obtentūrus esset.¹⁰

Write in Latin.

1. We have sent legates to the general to ask for troops.
2. We shall send a legate to you to ask for aid.

3. Since we cannot² defend ourselves and our possessions¹¹ from the enemy, we shall send legates to Geneva⁶ to ask for aid. 4. We shall go to the consuls to congratulate (them). 5. Let us go to the praetor to congratulate (him). 6. Ambassadors came from all the states; the Gauls to complain because the Germans had crossed² the Rhine to attack¹² their towns; (saying that) not even after a pledge¹³ had been given were they able to establish peace. 7. You are attempting that which is not very easy to do. 8. He shows (that) to march through the enemy's territory is (a thing) not easy to do.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 19, c: A. & S. 35: B, 6, 3: G. 15, REMARK 1: H. 18, 2, 1).

² See 149.

³ See 25.

⁴ Aedui, sc. veniēbant.

⁵ See A. & G. 342: A. & S. 523: B. 324: G. 663: H. 529, II.

⁶ See 105.

⁷ sorōrem ex mātē, his half-sister.

⁸ See 64.

⁹ invita, against her will; it modifies quae.

¹⁰ See LN. LXX. and 149.

¹¹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

¹² See 155.

¹³ See 122.



LESSON XC.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS.

156. The Calendar. A. & G. NOTE, 376, a-d: A. & S. 660 (1)-(4), a, b, NOTES 1, 2, (5), a: B. 371, 1-6: G. APPENDIX, page 491: H. 641-645.

157. Abbreviations. A. & G. 80, a-d: A. & S. 666, d: B. 373: G. Appendix, page 492: H. 649-650.

VOCABULARY.

Iānuārius, -a, -um, (Iān.)	<i>of January.</i>
Februārius, -a, -um, (Febr.)	<i>of February.</i>
Mārtius, -a, -um, (Mart.)	<i>of March.</i>
Aprīlis, -e, (Apr.)	<i>of April.</i>
Māius, -a, -um, (Māi.)	<i>of May.</i>
Iūnius, -a, -um, (Iūn.)	<i>of June.</i>
Quinctilis, -e, (Quint.)	<i>of July.</i>
Sextilis, -e, (Sext.)	<i>of August.</i>
September, -bris, -bre, (Sept.)	<i>of September.</i>
Octōber, -bris, -bre, (Oct.)	<i>of October.</i>
November, -bris, -bre, (Nov.)	<i>of November.</i>
December, -bris, -bre, (Dec.)	<i>of December.</i>
Kalendae, -ārum, (Kal.) f. pl.,	<i>Calends, the first day of the Roman month.</i>
Nōnae, -ārum, (Nōn.) f. pl.	<i>Nones; the 7th of March, May, July, and October, and the 5th of the other months.</i>
Idūs, -uum, (Id.) f. pl.,	<i>Ides; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.</i>
prīdiō, (pr. or prid.) adv.,	<i>the day before.</i>

Pronounce the abbreviated words as if they were printed in full.

1. Genāvam Kalendis¹ ipsīs Novembribus² occupābit.
2. Quī diēs erit a. d. VI. Kal. Nov.³ (ante diem sextum Kalendās Novembrēs).
3. C.⁴ Iūlius Caesar Idibus Mār-
tiis occisus est.
4. M. Tullius Cicerō a. d. III. Nōn. Iān.
nātus est.
5. P. Scīpiō a. d. XVII. Kal. Māi. mortuus
est.
6. Ap. Claudius a. d. II. Nōn. Apr. in senātū locū-
tus est.
7. Tl. Gracchus Nōnīs Iūniis Rōmā⁵ profectus
est.
8. M. Mānilius ad Rōmam profectus est a. d. VI.
Id. Sext.
9. Multa verba ōrātōres faciunt a. d. IV. Nōn.
Quint.
10. C. Caesar prid. Nōn.⁶ Febr. castra mōvit.
11. Dixi ego in senātū caedem tē contulisse⁷ prīncipum
in a. d. V. Kal. Nov.
12. Caedem prīncipum contulisti

ex a. d. V. Kal. Dec. ad pr. Kal.⁶ Iān. 13. T. Labiēnus prīd. Īd.⁶ Sept. hostēs superavit. 14. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.⁸ 15. Sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur. 16. Hōrum est nēmō quī nēsciat⁹ tē prīd. Kal.⁶ Iān. stetisse in comitiō cum tēlō.

Imitate in Abbreviations the preceding Latin exercises.

1. Gaius Cassius was born on the 31st of October.
2. Marcus Flaccus died on the 4th of May. 3. Gaius Gracchus was killed on the 25th of January. 4. Titus Labienus set out from Geneva on the 15th of July.
5. Tiberius Gracchus will break up camp on the 12th of February. 6. Lucius Piso was elected on the 1st of December. 7. That day was the 16th of April, when Lucius Cassius and Appius Claudius were consuls.⁸ 8. If you wish anything, return on the 13th of June. 9. He put off the murder of the consuls to the 30th of November. 10. There was no one of these who did not know⁹ that you stood in the Comitium on the 20th of August.

Notes.

¹ See 111.

² The Latin names of months are adjectives.

³ Such an expression as *anto diem sextum Kalendās Novembrēs* is treated as a *single word*; hence it is often used like an Ablative of Time, as in sentence 4; like a Predicate Substantive, as in sentence 2; or it is governed by the prepositions *in*, *ex*, and rarely by *ad*, as in sentences 11 and 12.

⁴ *Gāius*: Latin pronunciation *Gāh-yoos*; English pronunciation, *Gā-yus*.

⁵ See 107.

⁶ See A. & G. 261, *a*: A. & S. 660 (4), *b*, NOTE 1: H. 437, 1.

⁷ From *cōnferō*.

⁸ See 129.

⁹ A. & G. 320: A. & S. 500, *a*: B. 283: G. 631: H. 503, 1.

LESSON XCI.*

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. *primā lūce, at daybreak, at earliest dawn.*
2. *multō diē, late in the day.*
3. *primā nocte, in the first part of the night.*
4. *ad multam noctem, till late at night.*
5. *pridīē ēius diēi, on the day before.*
6. *postridīē ēius diēi, on the following day.*

Translate and parse.

1. *Primā lūce,*¹ *cum summus mōns ā T. Labiēnō tenē-*
*rētur,*² *ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mīlle et quīn-*
*gentis passibus*³ *abesset, Cōnsidius equō*⁴ *admissō ad eum*
*accurrit, dīcit mōntem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,*⁵
ab hostibus tenērī. 2. Multō dēnique diē per explorātō-
rēs Caesar cōgnōvit et mōntem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs
castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn
*vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse.*⁶ 3. *Circiter hominum*⁷
mīlia sex primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad
Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt. 4. Ad
multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est,
proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant. 5. Conlo-
*quendī*⁸ *Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō*⁹ *magis, quod*
*pridīē ēius diēi*¹⁰ *Germānī retinērī nōn poterant, quīn*¹¹
*in nostrōs tēla conicerent.*¹¹ 6. *Postridīē ēius diēi*¹⁰
*praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus*¹²
passuum duōbus ūltrā eum castra fēcit. 7. Postridīē
ēius diēi Caesar praesidium utrīsque castris, quod satis
esse vīsum est, reliquit.

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — The Lesson from Eutropius on page 174 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

Write in Latin.

1. The cavalry hastened to the city at full speed,¹⁸ and pitched their camp at daybreak not farther than nine miles from ours. 2. We ascertained late in the day that the top of the mountain was held by the Sequani. 3. We set out on the day before at earliest dawn, hastened at full speed, and arrived at sunset in the vicinity of Geneva. 4. They set out in the first part of the night and arrived in the territory of the Gauls on the following day at earliest dawn. 5. We staid at home on the fourth of July till late at night. 6. The reason for holding a conference⁸ does not seem good to us, and the more⁹ because the Romans cannot be restrained from hurling¹¹ missiles upon our men. 7. We shall leave for both camps a garrison which will seem to be sufficient.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the literal meaning of *primā luce*? Why is the Ablative used?

² Why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 325: A. & S. 509, *a*: B. 288, B: G. 585: H. 521, II., 2.

³ See 133.

⁴ See 139; what is the literal meaning of *equō admissō*?

⁵ What mood is *voluerit*? Why is that mood used in this clause? See 159.

⁶ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

⁷ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. ⁸ See 153.

⁹ *eo magis, the more*; for *eo*, see 79.

¹⁰ See A. & G. 214, *g* on p. 208: A. & S. 355, *b*: B. 201, 3, *a*: H. 398, 5.

¹¹ *quā* — *conicere*, *from hurling*; why is the Imperfect used? See 135; why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 319, *d*: A. & S. 493, (2): B. 284, 3: G. 555: H. 504.

¹² See 147.

¹³ *at full speed, equis admissis*; why the Plural?

LESSON XCII.*

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. *plūs posse, to be more powerful.*
2. *plūrimum posse, to be the most powerful, or to be very powerful.*
3. *eī grātiās agere, to thank him.*
4. *nōbīs est in animō iter facere, we intend to march.*
5. *latere apertō, on the unprotected flank.*
6. *ex equīs, on horseback.*
7. *memoriā tenēre, to remember.*
8. *māximīs potest itineribus, by the longest possible marches.*

Translate and parse.

1. Liscus dicit esse nōnnūllōs, quī privātīm plūs¹ possint² quam ipsī magistrātūs. 2. Nōn erat dubium, quān tōtīus Galliae plūrimum¹ Helvētiī possent.³ 3. Dumno- rix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. 4. Divitiacus dīxit eōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitīo atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Gal- liā potuissent,² coāctōs esse⁴ Sēquanīs⁵ obsidēs dare. 5. Decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit. 6. Caesarī renūtiātur⁶ Helvētiīs⁷ esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere. 7. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad eum mittunt⁸ quī dice- rent⁹ sibi esse in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere. 8. Pars apertō latere¹⁰ legiōnēs cir- cumvenire coepit.¹¹ 9. Captō mōnte¹² Boī et Tulingī nostrōs latere apertō aggressī circumvenire coepērunt. 10. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut conloquerentur¹³ et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad conloquium addūcerent¹³ postulāvit.

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — The Lessons from Eutropius on pages 175 and 176 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

11. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est,¹⁴ attingit ab¹⁵ Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum.
 12. Id¹⁶ hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur. 13. Mōribus¹⁷ suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis¹⁸ causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum¹⁹ poenam sequī oportēbat,²⁰ ut ignī cremārētur.
 14. Caesar, quod memoriā²¹ tenēbat²² L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum²³ et sub iugum mīssum,²⁴ concēdendum²⁴ nōn putābat.
 15. Caesarī cum id²⁵ nūntiātum esset,²⁶ eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī,²⁷ mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam māximīs potest itineribus²¹ in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. 16. Itaque rē¹² frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. 17. Liscus dicit Dumnorigem complūrēs annōs²⁸ portōria reliquaue²⁹ omnia Aeduōrum vēctīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre,³⁰ propterea quod illō¹² licente contrā licērī audeat³¹ nēmō.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See A. & G. 240, a: A. & S. 397: B. 176, 2, b: G. 333, 1: H. 378.

² Why is the Subjunctive used in this clause? See 152.

³ Why the Subjunctive? See LN. XCI., NOTE 11.

⁴ From cōgō.

⁵ See 39.

⁶ What is the subject of *renūntiātur*? What is it that *is reported to Caesar*?

⁷ See 137; what is it that *the Helvetii intend* (have in mind) *to do*? What then is the subject of *esse*?

⁸ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.

⁹ See 136 and Ex. 10; what question does *qui dicerent* answer?

¹⁰ *latere* is an Ablative of *Place*, answering the question *Where*?

¹¹ What kind of a verb is *coepit*? See 127.

¹² See 122.

¹³ See 136 and Ex. 9.

¹⁴ What is the subject of *dictum est*?

¹⁵ *ab*, on the side of.

¹⁶ *id* — *quod*, *he persuaded them to this the more easily, because*; *lit.*, *he persuaded this to them*, etc.; for *hōc*, see 79.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 8.

¹⁸ *ex vinculis*, *in chains*; what is its literal meaning?

¹⁹ *damnātum*, *if condemned*; see 121; it modifies *eum* understood, the object of *sequi*.

²⁰ What kind of a verb is *oportēbat*? See 128; what is its subject? See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7.

²¹ See 54.

²² What kind of a clause is *quod* — *tenēbat*? See 149; what is the object of *tenēbat*?

²³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

²⁴ *concoēdendum*, *sc. esse*; translate, *that it ought to be granted*.

²⁵ To what does *id* refer? What *had been reported* to Caesar?

²⁶ See LN. XCI., NOTE 2.

²⁷ *cōnārī* is in apposition with *id*.

²⁸ See 93.

²⁹ See LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 1.

³⁰ *redēpta habēre*, *had bought up*.

³¹ What kind of a verb is *audeat*? See A. & G. 136: A. & S. 196, α: B. 114: G. 167, 1: H. 268, 3.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.



I. FABLES.

1. The Mouse and the Kite.

Milvus laqueis inrētītus mūsculum exōrāvit, ut eum, corrōsīs plagīs, liberāret. Quō factō, milvus liberātus mūrem adripuit et dēvorāvit.

Haec fābula ostendit, quam grātiā malī prō beneficiis reddere soleant.

2. The Kid and the Wolf.

Haedus, stāns in tēctō domūs, lupō praetereuntī maledīxit. Cui lupus, *Nōn tū, inquit, sed tēctum mihi maledicīt.*

Saepe locus et tempus hominēs timidōs audācēs reddit.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

Pāvō, cōram grue pennās suās explicāns, *Quanta est, inquit, fōrmōsitās mea et tua dēfōrmitās!* At grūs ēvolāns, *Et quanta est, inquit, levitās mea et tua tarditās!*

Monet haec fābula, nē ob aliquod bonum, quod nōbīs nātūra tribuit, aliōs cōtemnāmus, quibus nātūra alia et fōrtasse māiōra dedit.

4. The Goat and the Wolf.

Lupus capram in altā rūpe stantem cōspicātus, *Cūr nōn, inquit, relinquis nūda illa et sterilia loca, et hūc dēscendis in herbidōs campōs, quī tibi laetum pābulum offerunt?* Cui respondit capra: *Mihi nōn est in animō dulcia tūtis praepōnere.*

5. The Dog in the Manger.

Canis iacēbat in praesēpī bovēque lātrandō ā pābulō arcēbat. Cui ūnus boum, *Quanta ista, inquit, invidia est, quod nōn pateris ut eō cibō vescāmur, quem tū ipse capere nec velis nec possis!*

Haec fābula invidiae indolem dēclārat.

6. The Fox and the Lion.

Volpēs, quae numquam leōnem viderat, cum eī forte occurrisset, ita est perterrita, ut paene morerētur formīdine. Eundem cōspicāta iterum, timuit quidem, sed nēquāquam, ut antea. Tertiō illi obviam facta, ausa est etiam propius accēdere eumque adloquī.

7. The Oxen.

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs in māximā concordīā, et sic ab omnī ferārum incursiōne tūti erant. Sed dissidiō inter illōs ortō, singuli ā feris petīti et laniāti sunt.

Fābula docet quantum bonī sit in concordīā.

8. The Ass in the Lion's Skin.

Asinus, pelle leōnis indūtus, territābat hominēs et bēstiās tamquam leō esset. Sed fōrte, dum sē celerius movet, aurēs ēminēbant; unde āgnitus in pīstrinum abductus est, ubi poenās petulantiae dedit.

Haec fābula stolidōs notat, quī immeritis honōribus superbiunt.

9. The Golden Egg.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallinam, quae eī cottīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit, illam aurī massam intus cēlāre, et gallinam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod in aliis gallinīs reperiri solet. Itaque dum māiōribus dīvitīs inhiābat, etiam minōrēs perdidit.

10. The Travellers and the Ass.

Duo quī ūnā iter faciēbant, asinum oberrantem in sōlitudine cōspicātī, accurrunt laetī, et uterque eum sibi vindicāre coepit, quod eum prior cōspēxisset. Dum vērō contendunt et rīxantur, nec ā verberibus abstinent, asinus aufugit et neuter eō potitur.

11. The Trumpeter.

Tubicen ab hostibus captus, *Nē mē, inquit, interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam.* At hostēs, *Propter hōc ipsum,* inquirunt, *tē interimemus, quod, cum ipse pūgnandī sis imperitus, aliōs ad pūgnam incitāre solēs.*

Fābula docet, nōn solum maleficōs esse pūniendōs sed etiam eōs, quī aliōs ad male faciendum inrītent.

12. Sour Grapes.

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium vīrium suārum contentiōne, sī eam forte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatigāta inānī labōre discēdēns dīxit: *At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eās in viā repertās tollerem.*

Haec fābula docet, multōs ea contemnere, quae sē adsequī posse dēspērent.

13. The Mice.

Mūrēs aliquandō habuērunt cōsiliū, quō modo sibi ā fēle cavērent. Multīs aliīs prōpositīs, omnibus placuit ut eī tintinnābulum adnecterētur; sīc enim ipsōs sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mūrēs quaererētur, quī fēlī tintinnābulum adnecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet, in suādendō plūrimōs esse audācēs, sed in ipsō periculō timidōs.

14. The Wolf and the Crane.

In faucibus lupī os inhaeserat. Mercēde igitur condūcit gruem, quī illud extrahat. Hōc grūs longitūdine collī facile effēcit. Cum autem mercēdem postulāret, subridēns lupus et dentibus infrendēns, *Num tibi, inquit, parva mercēs vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupī faucibus extrāxisti?*

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

Saturn.

1. Antiquissimīs temporibus Sāturnus in Ītaliā vēnisse dīcitur. Ibi haud procul ā Iāniculō arcem condidit, eamque Sātūrniam appellāvit. Hīc Italōs prīmus agri-cultūrā docuit.

Latīnus and Aenēas.

2. Postēā Latīnus in illīs regiōnibus imperāvit. Sub hōc rēge Trōia ī Asiā ēversa est. Hīc Aenēās, Anchīsae filius, cum multīs Trōiānīs, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercerat, aufūgit et in Ītaliā pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rēx eī benignē receptō filiā Lāvīniā in mātīmōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam in honōrem coniugis Lāvīnium appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascānius, Aenēae filius, rēgnū accēpit. Hīc sēdem rēgnī in aliū locū trānstulit, urbemque condidit in mōnte Albānō, eamque Albā Longā nūcupāvit. Eū secūtus est Silvius, quī post Aenēae mortē ā Lāvīniā genitus erat. Eius posterī omnēs usque ad Rōmā conditā Albāe rēgnāvērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

4. Ūnus hōrum rēgum, Rōmulus Silvius, sē Iove māiōrem esse dicēbat, et, cum tonāret, mīlitibus imperāvit, ut clipeōs hastīs percuterent, dicēbatque hunc sonum

multō clārīorem esse quam tonitrū. Fulmine ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Procās, rēx Albānōrum, duōs filiōs reliquit Numitōrem et Amūlium. Hōrum minor nātū, Amūlius, frātrī optiōnem dedit, utrum rēgnum habēre vellet, an bona, quāe pater reliquisset. Numitor paterna bona prae-tulit; Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

6. Amūlius, ut rēgnum firmissimē possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidiās interēmit et filiam frātris Rheam Silviam Vestālem virginem fēcit. Nam hīs Vestae sacerdotibus nōn licet virō nūbere. Sed haec ā Mārte geminōs filiōs Rōmulum et Remum peperit. Hōc cum Amūlius comperisset, mātrem in vincula coniēcit, puerōs autem in Tiberim abicī iussit.

7. Fōrte Tiberis aqua ūltrā ripam sē effūderat, et cum puerī in vadō essent positī, aqua refluēns eōs in siccō reliquit. Ad eōrum vāgītum lupa accurrit, eōsque ūberibus suis aluit. Quod vidēns Faustulus quīdam, pāstor illius regiōnis, puerōs sustulit et uxōrī Accae Lārentiae nūtriendōs dedit.

Foundation of Rome, B. C. 753.

8. Sic Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Cum adolēvissent et fōrte comperissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae māter fuisset, Amūlium interfēcērunt et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in mōnte Aventīnō quam Rōmulus ā suō nōmine Rōmam vocāvit. Haec cum moenibus circumdārētur, Remus occīsus est, dum frātrem inridēns moenia trānsiliēbat.

How Romulus increased the Number of Citizens.

9. Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret, asyllum patefecit, ad quod multī ex civitatibus suis pulsī accurrerunt. Sed novae urbis cīvibus coniugēs deerant. Fēstum itaque Neptūnī et lūdōs instituit. Ad hōs cum multī ex finitimīs populīs cum mulieribus et liberīs vēnissent, Rōmānī inter ipsōs lūdōs spectantēs virginēs rapuerunt.

War with the Sabines. — Tarpeia.

10. Populī illī, quōrum virginēs raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōrēs suscepērunt. Cum Rōmae appropinquārent, fōrte in Tarpēiam virginem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra prōcūrābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem mōnstrāret, eīque permīsērunt, ut mūnus sibi posceret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistrīs manibus gererent, ānulōs aureōs et armillās significāns. At hostēs in arcem ab eā perductī scūtīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant.

Treaty with the Sabines.

11. Tum Rōmulus cum hoste, quī mōntem Tarpēium tenēbat, pūgnam cōseruit in eō locō, ubi nunc forum Rōmānum est. In mediā caede raptae prōcessērunt, et hinc patrēs hinc coniugēs et socerōs complectēbantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facerent. Utrique hīs precibus commōtī sunt. Rōmulus foedus icit et Sabinōs in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus. — His Death.

12. Postea civitatem descripsit. Centum senatōrēs lēgit eōsque cum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam iīs

dēbitam patrēs appellāvit. Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit, eāsque raptārum nōminibus nūcupāvit. Annō rēgnī tricēsīmō septimō, cum exercitum lūstrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente oculis hominum subductus est. Hinc aliī eum ā senātōribus interfectum, aliī ad deōs sublātum esse existimāvērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius.

13. Post Rōmulī mortem ūnūs annī interrēgnum fuit. Quō ēlapsō, Numa Pompilius Curibus, urbe in agrō Sabīnōrum, nātus rēx creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nūllum gessit; nec minus tamen cīvitatī prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs dedit, et sacra plūrima īstituit, ut populī barbarī et bellicōsī mōrēs mollīret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, sē nymphae Ēgeriae, coniugis suae, iūssū facere dicēbat. Morbō dēcessit, quadrāgēsīmō tertiō imperī annō.

Reign of Tullus Hostilius.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostīlius, cūius avus sē in bellō adversus Sabīnōs fortem et strēnum virum prae-stiterat. Rēx creātus bellum Albānīs indixit, idque trigeminōrum Horātiōrum et Curiātiōrum certāmine finīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Mettī Fufētī diruit. Cum trīgintā duōbus annīs rēgnāset, fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

Reign of Ancus Marcius.

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscepit imperium. Hic vir aequitāte et religiōne avō

similis, Latīnōs bellō domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova eī moenia circumdedit. Carcerem prīmus aedificāvit. Ad Tiberis ōstia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque vocāvit. Vicēsimō quartō annō imperī morbō obiit.

Reign of Tarquinius Priscus.

16. Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Dēmarātī filius, quī tyrannōs patriae Corinthī fugiēns in Etrūriam vēnerat. Ipse Tarquinius, quī nōmen ab urbe Tarquiniīs accēpit, aliquandō Rōmam profectus erat. Advenientī aquila pilleum abstulit, et, postquam altē evolāverat, reposuit. Hinc Tanaquil coniūnx, mulier auguriōrum perīta, rēgnum eī portendī intellēxit.

17. Cum Rōmāe commorārētur, Ancī rēgis familiāritātem cōsecūtus est, quī eum filiōrum suōrum tūtōrem reliquit. Sed is pūpillis rēgnum intercēpit. Senātōribus, quōs Rōmulus creāverat, centum aliōs addidit, quī minōrum gentium sunt appellātī. Plūra bella fēliciter gessit, nec paucōs agrōs hostibus adēptōs urbis territōriō adiūnxit. Prīmus triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Cloācās fēcit; Capitōlium incohāvit. Tricēsimo octāvō imperī annō per Ancī filiōs, quibus rēgnum ēripuerat, occisus est.

Reign of Servius Tullius.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex nōbili fēminā, captīvā tamen et famulā. Cum in domō Tarquini Prisci educārētur, flamma in eius capite vīsa est. Hōc prōdigio Tanaquil eī summam dignitātem portendī intellēxit, et coniugī persuāsit, ut eum sicutī liberōs suōs educāret. Cum adolēvisset, rēx eī filiam in mātrimonium dedit.

19. Cum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset, Tanaquil dē superiōre parte domūs populum adlocūta est, dicēns; *rēgem grave quidem sed nōn lētāle volnus accēpisse; eum petere, ut populus dum convaluisset, Serviō Tulliō oboediret.* Sic Servius rēgnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Mōntēs trēs urbī adiūnxit. Prīmus omnium cēnsū ordināvit. Sub eō Rōma habuit octōgintā tria mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agris erant.

20. Hic rēx interfectus est scelere filiae Tulliae et Tarquinī Superbī, filiī eius rēgis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō dē gradibus cūriae dēiectus, cum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prīma coniugem rēgem salūtāvit. Cum domum rediret, aurigam super patris corpus in viā iacēns carpentum agere iussit.

Reign of Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome.

21. Tarquinius Superbus cōgnōmen mōribus meruit. Bellō tamen strēnuus plūrēs finitimōrum populōrum vicit. Templum Iovis in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnābat, urbem Latī, imperium perdidit. Nam cum filius eius Lucrētiae, nōbilissimae feminae, coniugī Tarquinī Collātīnī, vim fēcisset, haec sē ipsam occidit in cōspectū maritī, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eōs obtestāta fuerat, ut hanc iniūriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliique nōnnūllī in exitium rēgis, coniūrārunt, populōque persuāsērunt, ut ei portās urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, quī civitātem Ardeam cum rēge oppugnābat,

eum reliquit. Fūgit itaque cum uxōre et liberis suis. Ita Rōmae septem rēgēs rēgnāvērunt annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

III. THE LIFE OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

[Adapted from Eutropius.¹]

1. Caesar's Conquests in Northern Europe.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson XXXVI.

Annō urbis conditae ² (*founded*) sēscētēsimō nōnā-gēsīmō tertiō ³ (*six hundred ninety-third*) Gāius Iūlius ⁴ Caesar, quī postea imperāvit, cum Lūciō Bibulō cōsul est factus ⁵ (*elected*). Dēcrēta (*granted*) est ⁶ ei (*to him*) Gallia ⁷ et Illyricum, ⁷ cum legiōnibus decem (*ten*). Is primō vicit (*conquered*) Helvētiōs, quī nunc ⁸ Sēquanī appellantur. Deinde (*then*) vincendō (*by conquering*) per bella multa usque ad Ōceanum Britannicum prōcessit (*advanced*). Domuit (*he subdued*) autem annīs ⁹ novem (*nine*) fere omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est. Britannīs ¹⁰ mox (*afterward*) bellum intulit (*he brought upon*), et eōs (*them*) quoque victōs (*when conquered*) stīpendiāriōs fēcit (*he made*). Deinde Germānōs trāns Rhēnum multīs proeliīs vicit.

N.B. For all words not translated or found in previous vocabularies, see the General Vocabulary.

Grammar Lesson.

Learn the grammar references under 79 and 80 of this book and the Examples in Lesson XXXVI.

Write in Latin.

1. Who was Gaius Julius Caesar? Gaius Julius Caesar was a Roman general. 2. The soldiers of Caesar rejoiced in their victory.¹¹ 3. Caesar urges his soldiers to fight¹² with the enemy. 4. If Caesar had not been a great general, he would not have conquered¹³ all Gaul. 5. The Rhine is broad and the Alps are high.¹⁴

2. Caesar's Return to Italy.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson XLIV.

Caesar rediēns (*returning*) ex Galliā victor, coepit (*began*) poscere alterum cōsulātum (*consulate*). Contrādictum est (*This was opposed*) ā Marcellō Cōs.,¹ ā Bibulō, ā Pompēiō, ā Catōne, iūssusque² (*and he was ordered*) dīmissis exercitibus³ ad urbem redire (*to return*). Propter quam⁴ iniūriam ab Ariminō, ubi milītēs congregātōs (*assembled*) habēbat, adversum patriam cum exercitū (*army*) vēnit (*came*). Cōsulēs cum Pompēiō, senātusque omnis atque ūniversa (*all*) nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit (*fled*), et in Graeciam trānsiit (*passed over*); apud (*in*) Epīrum, Macedoniam, Achāiam, Pompēiō duce,⁵ senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit (*made ready for*).

Write in Latin.

Caesar came as a victor from Gaul to Ariminum,⁶ where after delaying (*morātus*) a few days⁷ he asked⁸ (his) country for the consulate. This was opposed by Marcellus and other friends of Pompey, who ordered⁹ Caesar to return to the city of Rome. On account of this insult Caesar led (*dūxit*) his soldiers against Pompey, who (*quī*), with his friends, fled to Macedonia, where he afterwards fought with Caesar.

3. Events Preceding the Battle of Pharsalia.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson LIV.

Caesar vacuum urbem ingressus dictatorem sē (*himself*) fecit. Inde Hispāniās¹ petiit. Ibi Pompēi exercitūs validissimōs et fortissimōs cum tribus (*three*) ducibus Lūciō Afrāniō, Mārcō Petrēiō, Mārcō Varrōne superāvit. Inde regressus, in Graeciam trānsiit, adversum Pompēium dīmīcāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus; ēvāsīt tamen quia nocte interveniente (*during the intervening night*) Pompēius sequī² nōluit; dixitque Caesar, nōn Pompēium scīre vincere, et illō diē sē potuisse superārī.

Write in Latin.

Caesar entered Rome³ and got possession of the city. Then he went from Rome⁴ to Spain, where he fought many battles with the brave leaders of the armies of Pompey. Having returned thence he was elected consul at Rome.⁵ In the next year he crossed over into Greece, where Pompey had collected a large army. In the first battle Pompey conquered Caesar and put him (*enum*) to flight, but did not follow him and subdue him.

4. The Battle of Pharsalia, and Death of Pompey.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson LXII.

Deinde in Thessaliā apud Palaepharsālum dīmīcāvērunt. Pompēi aciēs habuit quadrāgintā¹ mīlia peditum, equitēs in sinistrō cornū sēscentōs,² in dextrō quingentōs;³ praetereā (*moreover*) tōtīus Orientis auxilia, tōtam nōbilitātem, multōs senātōrēs, praetōriōs, cōsulārēs, et³ quī māgnōrum iam populōrum⁴ victōrēs fuissent. Caesar

in aciē suā habuit peditum nōn integra⁵ trīgintā milia,² equitēs mille.³ Pūgnātum est ingentī contentiōne, victusque ad postrēmum⁶ Pompēius et castra ēius dērepta sunt. Ipse fugātus Alexandriā petiit ut ā rēge Aegyptī auxilia acciperet, quī fōrtūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus, occidit Pompēium; caput ēius et ānulum Caesari mīsīt.

Write in Latin.

A battle between Caesar and Pompey was fought near Palaepharsalus in Thessaly. Pompey had many thousand foot soldiers and eleven hundred cavalry men with all the nobility and many senators and men of consular rank. Caesar had about thirty thousand soldiers, but they fought bravely and conquered the forces of Pompey. Pompey afterward fled⁷ to Egypt and was killed by the king.

5. Caesar's Alexandrian War.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson XCI.

Mox Caesar Alexandriā¹ vēnit. Ipsī quoque Ptolemaeus parāre voluit insidiās; quā causā rēgī bellum inlātum est. Victus in Nilō periit, inventumque est corpus ēius cum lōricā aureā. Caesar Alexandriā⁴ potītus, rēgnum Cleopatrae, Ptolemaei sorōrī, dedit. Rediēns⁵ inde Caesar Pharnacem, Mithridātis Māgnī filium, quī Pompēiō in⁶ auxilium apud Thessaliam fuerat, rebellantem in Pontō, atque multās populi Rōmāni prōvinciās occupantem, aciē vīcit.

Write in Latin.

After the death of Pompey, Caesar went to Alexandria⁷ where he conquered Ptolemy, king of Egypt. Ptolemy

perished in the Nile, and Caesar, having got possession of Alexandria, made Cleopatra, sister of Ptolemy, queen (*rēginam*) of Egypt. Caesar afterward went to Pontus and made war against Pharnaces, son of Mithridates the Great, who had been a friend of Pompey and at that time was an enemy of the Roman people.

6. The African and Spanish Wars.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson XCII.

Inde Rōmam regressus, tertiō sē cōsulem fēcit cum M. Aemiliō Lepidō, quī ei² dictātōrī³ magister equitum ante annum⁴ fuerat. Inde in Āfricam profectus est, ubi cum Iubā, Mauritiāniæ rēge, et multīs et⁵ nōbilibus Rōmānīs bellum gessit. In quō bellō, post multa proelia, victor fuit Caesar.

Post annum Caesar Rōmam regressus, quartō sē cōsulem fēcit, et statim ad Hispāniās⁶ profectus est; ubi Pompēi filiī, Gnaeus et Sextus, ingēns bellum reparāverant. Multa proelia fuērunt; ūltimum apud Mundam, in quō adeō Caesar paene victus est, ut, fugientibus suis, sē voluerit occidere. Dēnique reparātīs suis vīcit; ex Pompēi filiīs māior occisus est, minor fūgit.

Write in Latin.

In the next year, Caesar was made consul for the third time with M. Aemilius Lepidus. When he was informed⁷ (that) King Juba with many Romans had prepared to wage war with him, he advanced into Africa with all his forces and put his enemies to flight.⁹

Having returned from Africa to Rome he was chosen consul for the fourth time and immediately set out for

the Spains, where he conquered the two sons of Pompey in a battle near Munda. If he had not conquered¹⁰ in this battle, he would have slain himself.

6. (Continued.) The Last Days and Death of Caesar.

Inde Caesar, bellis cīvilibus tōtō orbe compositis, Rōmam rediit; agere insolentius coepit, et contrā cōsuetūdinem Rōmānae libertātis. Cum ergō et honōrēs ex suā voluntāte praestāret,¹ quī ā populō ante dēferēbantur, nec senātui ad sē venienti adsurgeret, aliaque rēgia ac paene tyrannica faceret, coniūrātum est² in eum ā sexāgintā vel amplius senātōribus equitibusque Rōmānīs. Praecipuī fuērunt inter coniūrātōs duo Brūtī, ex eō genere Brūtī, quī primus Rōmae cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat. Ergō Caesar, cum senātus diē inter cēterōs vēnisset ad cūriam, tribus et vīgintī vulneribus cōnfossus est.

EXERCISE.

Change the passage given above into Indirect Discourse, depending upon *Eutropius scripsit*. See Lessons LXXXIV.-LXXXVI.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

The References are mainly to the Sections of this Book.

I. FABLES.

1. ut — liberāret, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. — corrōsis plagis, by gnawing the nets; see 129. — quō, see 129; what is its antecedent? — ostendit, what is its object? — mali, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — soleant, see 151 and LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

3. *lupō*, see 132. — *praetereuntī* (*praeter* and *eō*), see 126; translate the Participle by a Relative Clause. — *inquit*, see A. & G. 144, *b*: A. & S. 249 (5): B. 134: G. 175, 2: H. 297, II., 2. — *reddīt*, see A. & G. 205, *b*: A. & S. 320: G. 285, EXCEPTION 2: H. 463, II., 2.

3. *explicāns*, *spreading*. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Table 2. — *ali-quod*, see 116, *a*. — *quod*, see 34 and 115. — *contemnāmus*, see 136. — *alia*, *māiōra*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

4. *laetum*, *abundant*. — *mihi*, see 137. — *est*, what is its subject? — *dulcia*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1. — *tūtis*, see 67.

5. *bovēs*, see A. & G. 61: A. & S. 110, *bōs*: B. 41: G. 52, 7: H. 66. — *lātrandō*, see 153 and 54. — *quod* — *pateris*, see 149. — *cibō*, see 54 and 104. — *vells*, see 125 and LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *occurrisset*, see A. & G. 325: A. & S. 509, *a*: B. 288, 1, B: G. 585: H. 521, II. 2. — *morerētur*, see 139. — *nēquāquam*, *anteā*, what do they modify? — *obviam facta*, *having met*; *obviam* is used with the Dative. — *ausa est*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

7. *pāscēbantur*, what does the Imperfect Tense denote? See 36. — *bovēs*, see note on *bovēs*, Table 5. — *petiti*, *sc. sunt*. — *boni*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *sit*, see 151.

8. *pelle*, see 54. — *indūtus*, *having clothed himself*. — *esset*, see A. & G. 312: A. & S. 481, (2): B. 307: G. 602: H. 513, II. — *movet*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 11. — *unde*, *for which reason*, i. e. because his ears stuck out. — *ignitus*, from *agnōscō*; render as if it were *ignitus est*, and supply *and*. — *dedit*, *suffered*. — *honōribus*, see 79.

9. *suspiciārī*, see 69. — *coepit*, see 127. — *illam*, why in the Accusative? why Feminine? — *quod* is here equivalent to *id quod*; compare the English *what*, equivalent to *that which*. — *solet*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *māiōribus*, see 84 and 85. — *divitiis*, see 67. — *minōrēs*, what does it modify?

10. *duo*, see 108 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *accurrunt*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1. — *laeti*, *joyfully*; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 557, *h*: B. 239: G. 325, REMARK 6: H. 443. — *prior*, see note on *laeti*; the comparative is used when two only are mentioned. — *cōnspēxisset*, see 149. *eō*, see 104.

11. *tubicen*, what is the derivation? See GEN. VY. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Table 2. — *interficite*, see 47. — *inermis*, derivation? See GEN. VY. — *propter hōc ipsum*, *for this very reason*; what is the reason? — *pūgnandī*, see 153 and 140. — *sīs*, see 145. — *solēs*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *esse pūniendōs*, see 130. — *eōs*, why in the Accusative? — *irritant*, see A. & G. 320: A. & S. 500, (2), (*d*): B. 283: G. 631: H. 500. I.

12. *vulpēs*, see A. & G. 30, *b*: A. & S. 84: B. 15, B., NOTE 2: G. 21, 3: H. 43, 3. — *omnium* — *contentiōne*, with *all its might*; what is the literal translation? For the Abl. *contentiōne*, see 54. — *SI*, (to see) *whether*. — *posset*, see 151. — *reperit*, from *reperiō*; see 121. — *tollerem*, see 143 and A. & G. 310, *a*: A. & S. 477, *e*: B. 305: G. 593, 2: H. 507, NOTE 7. — *quae*, see 34. — *sē*, see 53. — *dēspērent*, see note on *inritent*, Fable 11.

13. *quō modo*, (to see) *by what means*. — *sibi*, see A. & G. 227, *c*: A. & S. 378: B. 187, II., *a*: G. 346: H. 385, 1. — *cavērent*, see 151. — *alibi*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1 and 122. — *placuit*, what is its subject? — *adnectorētur*, see A. & G. 332, *a*: A. & S. 494, *a*: B. 284: G. 557: H. 501, I., 1. — *sic* — *posse*; this Infinitive Clause depends upon some such expression as *they thought, they said*. — *quaererētur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6; what is the subject of *quaererētur*? — *suādendō*, see 153. — *plūrimōs*, see 85 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

14. *inhaeserat*, from *inhaerēō*. — *mercedē*, see 146. — *extrahat*, see 136. — *hōc*, what was *this* that the crane accomplished? — *postulāret*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *num*, what answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1. — *mercēs*, see 64. — *vidētur*, what is its subject? — *faudibus*, how declined in the Singular? in the Plural? See GEN. VY.

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

1. *Iāniculō*, the *Janiculum* is a hill on the west side of the Tiber; the seven hills are on the east side; these are the *Palatine*, *Capitoline*, *Quirinal*, *Aventine*, *Coelian*, *Esquiline*, and *Viminal*. — *eam Sētūrniam*, see 58. — *Italōs*, *agricultūram*, see 71. — *primus* — *docuit*, was the first who taught; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 557 *h*: B. 239: G. 325, 7: H. 442, NOTE.

2. *in* — *regionibus*; what country is meant? — *sub*, in the reign of. — *Trōia*, *Troy* is said to have been destroyed in B. C. 1184. — *hinc*, from this place, i. e. from Troy. — *Aenēas*, *Anchisae*, how declined? See A. & G. 37: A. & S. 94: B. 22: G. 65: H. 50. — *quibus*, see 132. — *Lāvinium* was situated about 16 miles south of Rome, three miles from the coast.

3. *Aenēas*, see note on *Aenēas* in preceding section. — *trānstulit*, see 123. — *Albam Longam*, *Alba Longa* was about 16 miles southeast of Rome, situated on the western slope of the Alban Mount and overlooking

the Alban Lake. — *secutus est, succeeded.* — *genitus erat*, from *gignō*. — *ad Rōmam conditam*, until the founding of Rome; what is the literal translation? — *Albae*, see 106.

4. *Iove*, see 133 and A. & G. 60, b, page 32: A. & S. 111, (3): B. 41: H. 66, 3. — *tonāret*, see 128 and note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *multō*, see 144. — *tonitrū*, what case? why? — *ictus*, sc. *est*. — *Albānum Lacum*, see note on *Albam Longam* in section 3.

5. *minor nātū* = *iūnior*; for *nātū*, see 124. — *vellet*, see 125 and 151. *reliquisset*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *vestālem virginem*, a *vestal virgin* was bound by a vow of chastity; if she broke her vow she was buried alive. — *licet*, what is its subject? — *virō nūbere*, to marry; for *virō*, see 132; what does *nūbere* mean? — *peperit*, from *pariō*. — *hōc*, what was it that Amulius had found out?

7. *essent positi*, see A. & G. 326: A. & S. 510 (2): B. 286, 2: G. 586: H. 517. — *quod*, what is its antecedent? what did a certain *Faustus* see? — *regiōnis*, what *region* is meant? — *nūtriendōs*, to be nourished, modifies, *puerōs*, and expresses the purpose of *dedit*.

8. *adolēvissent*, from *adolēscō*; see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *quis*, see 64. — *avus*, sc. *fuisse* and see 151. — *mōnte Aventinō*, *Mount Aventine*, one of the seven hills of Rome. The best authorities agree that Rome was built at first on the Palatine, which hill stands a short distance northeast of the Aventine.

9. *civibus*, see A. & G. 231, a: A. & S. 380: B. 188, 2, d: H. 386. — *inter*, in the midst of. — *ipsōs*, *very*. — *spectantēs*, translate by a relative clause.

10. *Rōmae*, see 67. — *in* — *incidērunt*, they came unexpectedly upon. — *quod*, see note on *quod*, Fable 9. — *gererent*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5. — *et ea*, these also, i. e. as well as the rings and bracelets.

11. *Mōntem Tarpēium*, the *Tarpeian mount*; probably the Capitoline hill. — *forum Rōmānum*, the *Roman Forum*, an open space in the valley between the Capitoline and Palatine, surrounded by temples and other buildings; here the Roman people, the *Populus Romanus*, met to transact business. — *mediā*, midst of. — *raptae*, sc. *mulierēs*. — *hinc* — *hinc*, here — *there*. — *utrique*, who are meant? — *Icit*, compare the English expression, *strike a bargain*; the Romans were accustomed to offer a sacrifice to confirm a treaty, and hence this use of *icō*.

12. *cum* — *tum*, both — *and*. — *raptārum*, sc. *mulierum*. — *inter*, in the midst of. — *ortam*, which had arisen. — *oculis*, see 67. — *hinc*, i. e. by reason of the fact mentioned in the preceding sentence. — *alii* — *alii*, some — *others*. — *interfectum*, sc. *esse*. — *sublātum esse*, from *tollō*.

13. *quō*, what is its antecedent? — *Curibus*, see 106. — *iūssū*, see 79. *facere*, what is its object? — *morbō dēcessit*, i. e. Numa died a natural death, which has not always been the lot of kings; with *dēcessit* supply *dē vitā*.

14. *praestiterat*, what does it govern? See 58. — *creātus*, see LN. LXIII. and EXAMPLES. — *Horātiōrum*. The Horatii fought for Rome, the Curiatii for Alba. The three Curiatii fell, but one of the Horatii survived; this gave the victory to the Romans. — *Metti Fufēti*, see 17; for his treachery he was torn asunder by horses driven in opposite directions, and his city Alba razed to the ground. The inhabitants of Alba were removed to Rome and located on the Caelian Hill; this was the origin of the Roman *Plebs*. — *annis* expresses *duration of time*; what is the more usual construction? See 93. — *āruit*, fr. *ārdeō*, *ārdere*, *ārui*, *arsum*, *burn*.

15. *aequitāte*, see 124. — *avō*, see 86. — *bellō*, see 54. — *ei*, see A. & G. 225, *d*: A. & S. 379: B. 188: G. 348: H. 384, II., 2. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *obiit*, see 126 and note on *morbō dēcessit*, section 13.

16. *deinde*, i. e. after the death of Ancus Marcius. — *qui* refers to *Dēmarētī*. — *advenienti*, sc. *ei* and see A. & G. 229: A. & S. 380: B. 188, 2, *d*: H. 386, 2. — *abstulit*, from *auferō*, *auferre*, *abstuli*, *ablātum*. *carry off*: derived from *ab* *away, off*; and *ferō* *carry*. — *auguriōrum*, see 140.

17. *Rōmae*, see 106. — *commorārētur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *tūtōrem*, as *guardian*; compare 53. — *pūpillis*, see 67. — *gentium* modifies *senātōrēs* understood. — *plūra*, *several*; how declined? See LN. LXXXIV., NOTE 11. — *adēptōs*, from *adimō*. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *Cloācās*. The main *sewer*, known as the Cloaca Maxima, and a branch running from the Forum are still in use. — *Capitōlium*, the *Capitol*, signifies here the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. — *per filiōs*, at the instigation of the sons; they hired assassins to murder him: *ē filiis* would signify that they killed him with their own hands. — *quibus*, see note on *ei*, section 16.

18. *genitus*, from *gignō*. — *captiva*, see 25. — *domō*, how declined? See 97. — *coniugī*, see 132 and Ex. 1. — *ēducāret*, see 136.

19. *domus*; this stood on the Palatine. — *rēgem* — *obediret*; change this to the Direct Discourse; see 152. — *eum* refers to *rēgem*. — *coepit*, see 127. — *mōntēs* — *adiūnxit*. The Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine had been previously occupied. — *milia*, how declined? See 108. — *ciuium*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

20. *scelere*, see 79. — *filiae*, see 25. — *cūriae*. The *senate-house* stood near the Forum. — *domum*, see 105; how declined? — *prima*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *rēgem*, as *king*; compare 58.

21. *cōgnōmen*, i. e. *Superbus*, the *Proud*. — *mōribus*, see 79. — *bellō*, see 111. — *plūrēs*, how declined? See note on *plūra*, section 17. — *populōrum*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *Templum*. This *temple* had been begun by *Tarquinius Priscus*; see section 17. — *Iovis*, how declined? See note on *Iove*, section 4. — *Lucrētiae*, see 39. — *vim*, how declined? See GEN. VY. — *ut* — *ulciscerentur*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

22. *in, for.* — *coniūrārun*t, see LN. LXXV., NOTE 11. — *populō*, see 132. — *ei*, against him; see 39. — *civitatē* = *urbem*. — *Ardea* was situated about 18 miles south of Rome.

III. THE LIFE OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

1. ¹ Eutropius was a Roman historian who lived during the reigns of Constantine the Great, Julian, and Valens, in the fourth century of the Christian era. He wrote '*Breviārium Historiae Rōmānae*' ('An Epitome of Roman History'), in ten books. This sketch of Julius Caesar is taken with slight changes from Book VI., Chapters 17-25.

² *conditae*, a participial adjective modifying *urbis*; of the founded city = after the city was founded.

³ *sēscentēsimō — tertiō*. The Romans reckoned all dates from the year that the city of Rome was founded, 753 B.C.

⁴ *Iūlius*, see GEN. VY. under *Caesar*.

⁵ *est factus*, was elected; the Perfect, Passive, Third, Singular from the verb *faciō*.

⁶ *Dēcrēta est*, was granted; the Perfect, Passive, Third, Singular from the verb *dēcernō*.

⁷ *Gallia et Illyricum*, subject of *dēcrēta est*, see NOTE on *reddit*, Table 2. *Illyricum*, a country extending along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.

⁸ *nunc, now*; i. e., in the time of Eutropius.

⁹ *annis novem*, within nine years.

¹⁰ *Britanni*, indirect object of *intulit*.

¹¹ See 79 and Lesson XXXVI., NOTE 1.

¹² " 80 " " " NOTE 2.

¹³ " 80 " " " NOTE 3.

¹⁴ " 80 " " " NOTE 4.

2. ¹ *Cōs.*, an abbreviation of *cōnsule*, in apposition with *Marcellō*.

² *iūssusque*, supply *est* with *iūssus*. The form *iūssus est* is Perfect, Indicative, Passive, Third, Singular of the verb *iubeō*. See 24.

³ *dimissis exercitibus, the armies having been disbanded = having disbanded the armies.*

⁴ *quam, the Relative may often be rendered by a Demonstrative. Translate, this.*

⁵ *Pompēiō duce, Pompey being leader = with Pompey as leader.*

⁶ *Translate to Ariminum by Ariminum. See 105.*

⁷ See 93.

⁸ See 71.

⁹ See Vocabulary to LN. XLIV.

3. ¹ *Hispāniās, the Spains.* Spain was divided into two parts: *Hispania Citerior*, Spain this side [the river Ebro], and *Hispania Ulterior*, Spain beyond [the Ebro].

² See 69.

³ See 105.

⁴ See 107.

⁵ See 106.

4. ¹ See 108, also LN. LV., Vocabulary, N.B.

² Note that the numerals are made emphatic by their position.

³ Supply *eōs* as an antecedent of *qui*.

⁴ *populōrum*, Genitive depending upon *victōrēs*.

⁵ *nōn integra, scarcely.*

⁶ *ad postrēmum, finally.*

⁷ See GEN. VY.

5. ¹ *Alexandriam, see 105.*

² *insidiās*, plural in form, but singular in meaning. Translate, *plot*.

³ *quā, the Relative may often be rendered by a Demonstrative. Translate, this.*

⁴ *Alexandria, see 104.*

⁵ *Rediēns*, Present Participle of *redeō*.

⁶ *in* with the Accusative is here used in place of a second Dative.

See 138.

⁷ See NOTE 1.

6. ¹ *tertiō, for the third time.*

² *ei, see 137.*

³ *dictātōri, see 25.*

⁴ *ante annum, the year before.*

⁵ *et, see LN. VI., NOTE 3.*

⁶ *Hispaniās, see Chapter 3, of 'The Life of C. Julius Caesar,' NOTE 1.*

⁷ See 150.

⁸ See 152.

⁹ Translate *put* — *to fight* by one word. See GEN. VY.

¹⁰ See LN. LXXVII., Ex. 6.

6 (con.). ¹ *praestāret, assumed.*

² *coniūrātum est, the impersonal construction is more frequently used in Latin than in English. Translate, a conspiracy was made.*

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English.

Numerals and Pronouns not given in this Vocabulary can be found in the Grammar.

The References are to Sections of this book.

The English words in SMALL CAPITALS are derived either directly or indirectly from the Latin words under which they stand, or from the same Root.

The parts in Parentheses give the derivation of the Latin words. For Abbreviations see page xiv.

A.

A., abbreviation of *Aulus*, a Roman praenomen.

ā, **ab**, prep. w. abl., *from, away from; by; on the side of.*

ab-dūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxi**, **-ductum** (*ab away, dūcō lead*), *lead away.* **ABDUCT**, **ABDUCTION.**

ab-iciō (or **-iciō**) **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** (*ab away, down; ieciō cast*), *cast away or down.*

abstineō, **-tinēre**, **-tinui**, **-tentum** (*ab(s) from, teneō keep*), *keep from*, **ABSTAIN.** **ABSTINENCE.**

ab-sum, **-esse**, **āfui** (*ab away, sum be*) *be away, be* **ABSENT**, *be distant.*

ac. See **atque.**

Acca, **-ae**, *f.*, *Acca Larentia*, the wife of Faustulus.

accēdō, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum** (*ad towards, cēdō go*), *go towards, draw near, approach; assault.* **ACCEDE**, **ACCESSION.**

accidō, **-cidere**, **-cidi** (*ad upon, cadō fall*), *fall upon, befall, happen.* **ACCIDENT.**

accipīō, **-cipere**, **-cēpi**, **-ceptum** (*ad to one's self, capiō take*), *receive*, **ACCEPT**, *take.*

accurrō, **-currere**, **-cucurri** and **-curri**, **-cursum** (*ad to, currō run*), *run to, hasten to.*

accūsō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** (*ad to, causa a lawsui*), **ACCUSE**, *blame, censure.* **ACCUSATION.**

acer, **āoris**, **āore**, *sharp.* **ACRID.**

acerbus, -a, -um, *sour.* ACERBITY.

Achāia, -ae, f., a Roman province, including the southern part of ancient Greece.

aciēs, **aciēi**, f., *edge; line, line of battle; army in battle-array.* See **āgmen**.

ācriter, **ācrius**, **ācerrimē**, adv. (**ācer** *sharp*), *sharply, fiercely, violently.*

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards; for; near; w. numerals, about; w. names of towns, towards, in or into the vicinity of.*

ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*ad* denoting a *beginning*, **amō**, *love*), *begin to love, acquire a liking for.*

ad-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (*ad* *to, beside; dō* *put*), **ADD**.

ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (*ad* *to, dūcō* *lead*), *lead to, lead; influence.*

ad-eō, -īre, -īi, -itum (*ad* *to, eō* *go*), *go to.* See 126.

ad-eō, adv., *so.*

ad-ferō, **ad-ferre**, **attulī**, **ad-lātum** (*ad* *to, ferō* *bring*), *bring to, carry to; offer; carry.*

ad-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (*ad* *to, faciō* *do*), **AFFECT**, *influence; magnō dolore affici*, *to be very grievously affected.*

ad-imō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum (*ad* *to one's self, emō* *take*), *take away.*

aditus, -ūs, m. (*adeō* *go to*), *approach, access.*

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctum (*ad* *to, iungō* *join*) *join to, join.*

ad-loquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum (*ad* *to, loquor* *speak*), *speak to, address.*

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*ad* *without additional force, ministrō* *serve*), **ADMINISTER**, *manage.* **ADMINISTRATION**, **ADMINISTRATOR.**

ad-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīs-sum (*ad* *to, mittō* *let go*) *allow, ADMIT; give the reins to; equō admittō*, *at full speed.* **ADMISSION.**

ad-moneō, -monēre, -monuī, -monitum (*ad* w. no perceptible additional force, *moneō* *admonish*), **ADMONISH**, *warn.* **ADMONITION.**

ad-nectō, -nectere, -nēxui, -nēxum (*ad* *to, nectō* *tie, fasten*), *tie to, fasten to.* **ANEX.**

adolēscō, **adolēscere**, **adolēvi**, **adultum** (*adolē* *cause to grow up*), *grow, increase, grow up.* **ADULT.**

ad-ripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum (*ad* *upon, rapiō* *seize*), *seize upon.*

adrogantia, -ae, f. (*adrogāns* *assuming*), *haughtiness, insolence, ARROGANCE.*

ad-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (*ad* *with no perceptible additional force, sequor* *follow*), *follow, overtake, obtain.*

ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fui (ad near, sum be), be near, be present; assist.

ad-surgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrēctum (ad w. no perceptible additional force, surgō rise), to rise, stand up.

adulēscēns, -ntis, adj., young, youthful. As a noun m. and f., a young man or woman.

ad-venio, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (ad to, veniō come), come to, arrive, come. **ADVENTURE.**
adventus, -ūs, m. (adveniō come to), arrival, approach. **ADVENT.**

adversus and **adversum**, prep. w. acc., towards, against.

advertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum (ad towards, vertō turn), turn towards; **id animum advertere**, to turn the mind towards it, to perceive it. **ADVERT.**

aedificium, -i, n. (aedificō build), building, **EDIFICE.**

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (aedēs building for habitation, faciō make), build. **EDIFY, EDIFICATION.**

Aedui, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick.

Aegyptus, -i, m., Egypt.

Aemilius, -i, m. See under **Lepidus.**

Aenēas, -ae, m., a Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchises.

aequitās, -ātis, f. (aequus fair,

equitable), **EQUITY, justice, moderation.**

aequus, -a, -um, even, level; **EQUAL; like; fair, equitable.**

aestās, -ātis, f., summer.

aetās, -ātis, f., age.

Afrānius, -i, m., *L. Afranius*, a friend of Pompey the Great.

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa*, the Roman province of Africa, including the territory of Carthage.

ager, agri, m., field, land; country, territory.

agger, aggeris, m., mound; materials for a mound.

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum (ad to, gradior go), go to, approach; go against, attack. **AGGRESSION, AGGRESSIVE.**

āgmen, āgminis, n. (agō put in motion), army on the march, line of march; [aciōs, army in battle array; **exercitus**, a disciplined army]; **āgmen novissimum**, the rear; **primum āgmen**, the van.

agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum (ad denoting reference, (g)nōscō know), recognize; know.

agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, put in motion; lead, drive, conduct; act, do, perform. **ACTION, AGENT.**

agri cultūra, -ae, f. (ager field, colō cultivate), **AGRICULTURE.**

alacer, alacris, alacre, lively, cheerful; eager, fierce.

alacritās, -ātis, f. (alacer lively),

liveliness, eagerness, zeal.
ALACRITY.
Alba or **Alba Longa**, the mother city of Rome, built by Ascanius.
Albānus, -ī, m., an *Alban*, an inhabitant of Alba.
Alexandria, -ae, f., *Alexandria*, a city of Africa.
aliquandō, adv. (*aliquis* some one), at some time, once, formerly.
aliquis, indef. pron. [see 116, a], some one, somebody, something, some; any one, anybody, anything, any.
alius, *alia*, *aliud* [see 24], other, another.
Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., a people in the southeastern part of Gaul.
alō, *alere*, *alui*, *alitur*, or *altum*, nourish, feed, support.
Alpēs, *Alpium*, f. pl., the ALPS.
altō, *altius*, *altissimō* (*altus* high, low), on high, highly; low, lowly.
alter, *altera*, *alterum* [see 24], one of two, the other, the second; alter — alter, the one — the other.
altitūdō, *altitudinis*, f. (*altus* high, deep), height; depth; ALTITUDE.
altus, -a, -um, (*alō* nourish), high, lofty; deep.
amicitia, -ae, f. (*amicus* friendly), friendship.
amicus, -a, -um, (*amō* love),

loving, friendly; *amicus*, -ī, m., friend. **AMICABLE.**
ā-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (*ab* away, *mittō* let go), lose.
ampliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*amplus* of large extent), enlarge.
amplius, adv., more, farther.
Amūlius, -ī, m., son of *Silvius Procas* and brother of *Numitor*.
an, adv., or.
Anchisēs, -ae, m., a Trojan, the father of *Aenēas*.
Ancus Marcius, -ī, m., the fourth king of Rome.
angustiae, -arum, f. pl. (*angustus* narrow), narrow pass, defile; difficulty.
animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum (*animus* mind, *advertō* turn towards), notice.
ANIMADVERT, **ANIMADVERSION**.
animal, *animālis*, n., **ANIMAL**.
animus, -ī, m., mind, soul; disposition; affection; feeling, courage. [*animus* denotes the human soul, including all its faculties, including *mēns*; *mēns* denotes the thinking, MENTAL faculty.]
annus, -ī, m., year. **ANNUAL**.
ante, prep. w. acc., before; adv., before, previously. **ANTE** in **ANTECEDENT**, etc.
antē, adv. (*ante* before, *ea* that), before, previously.
antiquus, -a, -um (*ante* before),

ancient, old; of long continuance. **ANTIQUÉ, ANTIQUATED.**
ānulus, -ī, m., ring. **ANNULAR.**
Ap., abbreviation of *Appius*, a Roman prænomen.
apertus, -a, -um (*aperiō uncovered*), *uncovered, unprotected.*
appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*ad to, pellō bring one's self to a person*), *address; name, call.*
APPEAL, APPELLATION.
appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*ad to, propinquō draw near*), *draw near to, approach.*
apud, prep. w. acc., at, near, in presence of, among.
aqua, -ae, f., water. **AQUEDUCT.**
aquila, -ae, f., eagle.
Aquiliā, -ae, f., a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea.
Aquitāni, -ōrum, m. pl., inhabitants of Aquitania.
Aquitānia, -ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.
Arar, Araris, acc. Ararim, m., the *Saône* [pronounced *Sōne*], a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone.
arceō, arceŕe, arcui, drive away; ward off, keep from; restrain.
arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitum, invile, summon.
Ardea, -ae, f., a city of Latium, capital of the Rutuli.
Ariminum, -ī, n., Ariminum, a town in Umbria.
Arlovistus, -ī, m., a powerful German king in the time of Caesar.

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., ARMS, weapons.
armilla, -ae, f., bracelet or ring, worn on the left arm by soldiers as a reward for valor.
Arvernī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people in the eastern part of Aquitania.
arx, arcis, f., citadel, fortress.
Ascanius, -ī, m., son of Aeneas.
Asia, -ae, f., ASIA.
asinus, -ī, m., an ass.
asylum, -ī, n., ASYLUM.
at, conj., but.
atque, ac, conj. (ad in addition, -que and), and also, and.
attingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum (*ad against, tangō touch*), *touch against, border upon; touch, reach.*
auctōritās, -ātis, f. (auctor producer), AUTHORITY, influence.
audācia, -ae, f. (audāx bold), boldness, AUDACITY.
audācter or audāciter, audācius, audācissimē, adv. (audāx bold), boldly, courageously.
audāx, gen. audācis (audēō dare), bold, daring, AUDACIOUS.
audēō, audēre, ausus sum [see **LN. XCII., NOTE 31**], *dare, venture.*
audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, hear.
AUDIT, AUDITOR, AUDIENCE.
aufugio, -fugere, -fūgi (ab away, fugiō flee), flee away, escape; flee.
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, increase, AUGMENT.

augurium, -ī, n. (*auguror* fr. *augur* *diviner*), **AUGURY**, *divination*.

aureus, -a, -um (*aurum* *gold*), *golden*.

auriga, -ae, m. (*aurea* *bridle*, *agō* *manage*), *charioteer*.

auris, **auris**, f. *ear*. **AURI-CULAR**.

aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.

aut, conj., *or*; **aut** — **aut**, *either* — *or*.

autem, conj., *but*, *yet*, *moreover*.

auxilium, -ī, n. (*augeō* *increase*), *help*, *aid*; pl. **AUXILIARIES**.

Aventinus, -ī, m., *the Aventine*.

āversus, -a, -um (*āvertō* *turn away*), *turned away*; **āversus** *hostis*, *a retreating enemy*.

ā-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-sum (*ab* *away*, *vertō* *turn*), *turn away*, *turn aside*, **AVERT**. **AVERSION**.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

B.

barbarus, -a, -um, *foreign*; *uncivilized*; *savage*, *rude*, **BARBAROUS**. **BARBARIAN**.

beātus, -a, -um (*beō* *bless*), *happy*. **BEATIFIC**.

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., *a powerful people dwelling in Northern Gaul*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*bellum* *war*), *carry on war*.

bellum, -ī, n., *war*.

bene, adv., *well*, *finely*.

beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness*, **BENEFIT**. **BENEFICIAL**.

benignō, adv. (*benignus* *kind*), *kindly*; **BENIGNLY**. **BENIGN**, **BENIGNANT**.

bēstia, -ae, f., **BEAST**.

Bibracte, -is, n., *the chief town of the Aedui*.

Bibulus, -ī, m. *Lucius Bibulus*, *consul with Caesar*.

biennium, -ī, n. (*bis* *twice*, *annus* *year*), *two years*. **BIENNIAL**.

Bōii, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Bōii* [*pronounced Bō-yī*], *a nomadic people dwelling chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany*.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*, *friendly*; **bonum**, -ī, n., *a good thing*, *an advantage*; **bona**, -ōrum, n. pl., *goods*, *an estate*.

bōs, **bovis**, m. and f., *ox*, *cow*.

brevis, **breve**, *short*, **BRIEF**.

Britanni, -ōrum, m., *the Britons*.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Britain*. **Oceanus Britannicus**, *the English Channel*.

Brūtus, -ī, m. (*brūtus* *stupid*), *L. Junius Brutus*, *the deliverer of Rome from regal dominion*.

C.

C., abbreviation of **Gāius** [*pronounced Gā-yus*], *a Roman praenomen*.

caedēs, **caedis**, f. (*caedō* *kill*), *murder*, *slaughter*, *carnage*.

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, cut, cut down; kill, murder. -CIDE in PARRI-CIDE, MATRI-CIDE, etc.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., Gaius Julius Caesar, a distinguished Roman general, orator, statesman, and author.

calamitās, -ātis, f., CALAMITY, disaster, misfortune.

campus, -i, m., plain, field; Campus, the Campus Martius, a grassy plain just outside the walls of Rome on which the people assembled for elections, military drills, and games.

canis, canis, m. and f., dog.

capīō, capere, cēpī, captum, take, CAPTURE.

Capitōlium, -i, n. (caput head), THE CAPITOL, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome; the Capitoline hill, including both temple and citadel.

capra, -ae, f., a she-goat.

captivus, -a, -um (capīō capture), CAPTIVE; captivus, -i, m., a captive, a prisoner.

caput, capitis, n., head. OC-CIPUT.

carcer, carceris, m., prison. IN-CARCER-ATE.

careō, carēre, carui, caritum, be without, lack.

carpentum, -i, n., chariot.

carrus, -i, m., CART, wagon.

cārus, -a, -um, dear, beloved.

Cassius, -i, m., a Roman name.

castellum, -i, n. (castrum a fortified place), CASTLE, fort, stronghold.

Casticus, -i, m., a chief of the Sequani.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., soldiers' huts, camp.

Catō, -ōnis, m., M. Porcius Cato Uticensis.

causa, -ae, f., CAUSE, reason, motive; causā, for the sake of, when following a Genitive; causam dīcere, to plead one's cause.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, be on one's guard. CAUTIOUS.

celer, celeris, celere (cellō impel), swift, speedy. CELERITY.

celeriter, celerius, celerrimē, adv. (celer swift), swiftly, quickly, immediately.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, CONCEAL, hide.

cēnsus, -ūs, m. (cēnsēō assess, register), CENSUS.

Centrōnēs, -um, m. pl., a tribe in Southeastern Gaul.

centum, num. adj. indecl., hundred.

certāmen, certāminis, n. (certō contend), contest; battle.

certus, -a, -um (cernō determine), CERTAIN, sure; Caesarem certiorē facere, to inform Caesar.

cēteri, -ae, -a, adj. pl., the rest.

cibus, -i, m., food.

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, surround, encircle. CINCTURE.

circiter, adv. (*circus circle*),
about, near.

circum, prep. w. acc. (*circus circle*), around ; near, in the environs of. **CIRCUM-** is a prefix in many English words; e. g. **CIRCUM-FERENCE**, **CIRCUM-NAVIGATE**.

circum-dō, -**dare**, -**dedī**, -**datum** (*circum around, dō put*), put around, surround.

circum-veniō, -**venīre**, -**vēnī**, -**ventum** (*circum around, veniō come*), come around, surround ; **CIRCUMVENT**.

citerior, **citerius** [see 85],
hither.

citrā, prep. w. acc., this side of.

civilis, -**e**, adj., civil.

civis, **civis**, m. and f., citizen.
CIVIL.

civitas, -**ātis**, f. (*civis citizen*), a body of citizens, a state ; citizenship.

clārus, -**a**, -**um**, **CLEAR** ; famous.

claudō, **claudere**, **clausī clausum**, close, enclose, shut ; **āgmen claudere**, to bring up the rear. **IN-CLUDE**, **EX-CLUDE**.

Cleopatra, -**ae**, f., *Cleopatra*, a queen of Egypt.

cliēns, **clientis**, m. and f. (*cluēs fr. cluēō hear*), **CLIENT**, vassal.

clipeus or **clypeus**, -**i**, m., shield.

cloāca, -**ae**, f., drain, sewer ; **Cloāca mājima**, the great sewer in Rome, constructed by Tarquinius Priscus.

coēmō, -**emere**, -**ēmi**, -**ēptum**

(*cum denoting completeness, emō buy*), purchase, buy up.

coepī, **coepisse** [see 127], have begun, began.

cōgitō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum** (*cum denoting completeness, agitō weigh in the mind*), consider, reflect upon. **COGITATE**.

cōgnōmen, **cōgnōminis**, n. (*cum denoting similarity, (g)nōmen name*), a surname.

cōgnōscō, -**gnōscere**, -**gnōvī**, -**gnitum** (*cum denoting completeness, (g)nōscō know*), know completely ; find out, ascertain, learn, discover. **COGNITION**.

cōgō, **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum** (*cum together, agō drive*), drive or lead together, collect ; compel. **COGENT**.

cohors, **cohortis**, f., **COHORT**, the tenth part of a legion.

co-hortor, -**ārī**, -**ātus sum** (*cum intensive, hortor urge*), exhort, encourage.

Collātīnus, -**i**, m., cognomen of L. Tarquinius.

collis, **collis**, m., a hill.

collum, -**i**, n., neck.

colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultum**, dwell ; till, **CULTIVATE** ; honor.

combūrō, -**būrere**, -**būssī**, -**būstum** (*cum denoting completeness, (b)ūrō burn*), burn up. **COMBUSTION**.

comitium, -**i**, n. (*cum together, eō go*), the *comitium*, a place where the Romans assembled to vote.

commeātus, -ūs, m. (*commeō come and go*), *supplies, provisions*.

com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cum intensive, memorō remind of*), *call to mind; relate*. **COMMEMORATION**.

com-meō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cum denoting frequency, meō go*), *come and go, resort; ad Belgās commeāre, to visit the Belgae*.

com-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (*cum together, mittō cause to go*), *join; begin; COMMIT*. **COMMISSION**.

commodō, adv. (*commodus advantageous*), *advantageously, fitly, conveniently; satis commodō, conveniently enough, with sufficient ease*.

commodus, -a, -um (*cum denoting completeness, modus measure*), *advantageous, suitable, fit*. **COMMODIOUS**.

com-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum (*cum denoting completeness, moror tarry*), *stop; reside, stay at; remain*.

com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (*cum intensive, moveō move*), *move, affect, excite, disturb, stir up, induce*. **COMMOTION**.

com-mūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvī and -mūnī, -mūnītum (*cum denoting completeness, mūniō fortify*), *fortify on all sides*.

communis, **commūne** (*cum to-*

gether, munis serving), **COMMON**.

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cum intensive, parō prepare*), *prepare with zeal, make ready*.

com-periō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, *learn, discover*.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum (*cum with, plector entwine one's self*), *embrace*.

complūrēs, **complūra** (*rarely complūria*), gen. **complūrium**, adj. pl. (*cum together, plūrēs several*), *several together, very many*.

com-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, **positum** (*cum together, pōnō put*), *settle, arrange*.

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cum together, portō bring*), *bring together, collect*. **COMFORT**.

cōnātum, -ī, n. (*cōnor to attempt*), *an attempt*.

con-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (*cum denoting completeness, cēdō yield*), *grant; CONCEDE*. **CONCESSION**.

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*concilium a calling together*), *bring together; win, CONCILIATE*.

concilium, -ī, n. (*cum together, cālō call*), **COUNCIL**, *assembly*.

concordia, -ae, f. (*concoro fr. cum denoting similarity, cor heart*), **CONCORD**, *harmony*.

con-currō, -currere, -cucurri and -curri, -cursum (*cum together, currō run*), *rush together; hasten*. **CONCURRENT**

conditiō, conditiōnis, f. (*condō put together*), **CONDITION.**

condō, condere, condidī, conditum (*eum together, dō put*), *found, build.*

con-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (*eum together, dūcō lead*), *lead together, collect; hire; CONDUCE.*

cōn-ferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātum (*eum together, ferō bring*), *bring together, collect; put off; CONFER; sē cōn-ferre, to betake one's self.* **CONFERENCE, COLLATE.**

conficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (*eum denoting completeness, faciō make*), *execute, accomplish, finish.* **CONFECTION.**

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*eum denoting completeness, firmus firm*), *establish, strengthen, CONFIRM; encourage; assert.* **CONFIRMATION.**

cōn-fodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossūm (*eum denoting completeness, fodiō dig, pierce*), *stab, pierce.*

cōn-iciō (or -liciō) -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (*eum intensive, iaciō throw*), *hurl.* **CONJECTURE.**

confūrātī, -ōrum, m., conspirators.

confūrātiō, confūrātiōnis, f. (*confūrō swear together*), *conspiracy.*

con-iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*eum together, iūrō swear*), *swear together; conspire.* **CONJURE.**

coniūnx or coniux, coniugis, m. and f. (*coniungō fr. eum together, iungō join*), *spouse, husband, wife.*

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*eum denoting completeness, locō place*), *lay, put, place; nūptum — conlocāre, to give in marriage.* **COLLOCATE, COLLOCATION.**

conloquium, -ī, n. (*conloquor speak together*), *conference, interview.* **COLLOQUY.**

con-loquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum (*eum with, loquor speak*), *speak with, hold a conference.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, attempt, try. **CONATIVE.**

cōnsciūs, -a, -um (*eum with, sciō know*), **CONSCIOUS.**

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m. (*cōnsentiō think together*), *agreement, CONSENT.*

cōn-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (*eum denoting completeness, sequor follow*), *follow after, follow; gain; obtain.* **CONSEQUENT.**

cōn-serō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum (*eum together, serō join*), *join together, join; pūgnam cōnserere, to join battle, to fight.*

Cōnsidiūs, -ī, m., Publius Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

cōn-sidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum (*eum together, sidō sit down*), *sit down together, encamp.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *deliberation*, COUNSEL, *plan, design*.

cōn-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, **stitutum** (cum denoting completeness, *sistō place one's self*), *take a stand; keep a position; halt*. CONSIST, CONSISTENT.

cōn-sōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum (cum intensive, *sōlor comfort*), *comfort greatly*, CONSOLE; *encourage, cheer*.

cōnspectus, -ūs, m. (**cōnspiciō** *look at*), *sight, view, presence*.

cōn-spiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectum (cum denoting completeness, *speciō look*), *behold, see*.

cōnspicior, -ārī, -ātus sum (**cōnspiciō**), *behold, see*.

cōnstantia, -ae, f. (**cōnstāns** *standing firm*), *firmness, steadfastness*, CONSTANCY.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui, **stitutum** (cum denoting completeness, *statuō cause to stand*), *resolve, determine; establish, station*. CONSTITUTE, CONSTITUENT.

cōn-suēscō, **cōn-suēscere**, **cōn-suēvi**, **cōn-suētum**, *become accustomed, be wont*.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., *tradition, usage*.

cōnsul, **cōnsulis**, m. (akin to **cōnsulō** *consul*), CONSUL; one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually.

cōnsulāris, -e, adj., *ex-consul; one of consular rank*.

cōn-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūptum (cum denoting completeness, *sūmō take*), CONSUME, *waste, destroy*. CONSUMPTION.

con-temnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, *despise*, CONTEMN. CONTEMPT.

con-tendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum (cum denoting completeness, *tendō stretch*), *hasten, march in haste; contend, dispute, fight; w. inf. proceed, set out eagerly*.

contentiō, **contentiōnis**, f. (**contendō** *contend*), CONTENTION, *strife*.

contineo, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum (cum together, *teneō hold*), *hold together; encompass, hem in, bound; occupy, restrain*. CONTENT, CONTINENT.

continenter, adv. (**continēns** *hanging together*), *continually, without cessation*.

contingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum (cum denoting completeness, *tangō touch*), *touch on all sides; touch, border upon*.

CONTACT.

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against*.

contumēlia, -ae, f. (cum intensive, *tumēō swell*), *insult, abuse; disgrace*. CONTUMELY.

con-valēscō, -valēscere, -valui (cum denoting completeness, *valēscō grow strong*), *regain health, recover*. CONVALESCENT.

con-veniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum (cum together, *veniō come*),

- come together, assemble*; **CON-
VENE. CONVENTION.**
- conventus, -ūs, m.** (*conveniō
come together*), *court*; **conven-
tum agere, to hold a court.**
- con-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -ver-
sum** (*cum* denoting *complete-
ness, vertō turn*), *turn about,
change*; **in fugam convertere,
to put to flight. CONVERT,
CONVERSION.**
- con-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (*cum
together, vocō call*), *call together,
summon, CONVOKE. CONVO-
CATION.*
- cōpia, -ae, f.** (*cum* denoting *com-
pleteness, ops means of any
kind*), *plenty, abundance, sup-
ply*; *number*; *pl., forces, troops*;
riches.
- cōpiōsus, -a, -um** (*cōpia plenty,
-sus full of*), *wealthy, well-sup-
plied*; **COPIOUS.**
- cōram, prep. w. abl., in the pres-
ence of; before: adv., openly.**
- Corinthus, -i, f., Corinth, a city
in Greece.**
- corpus, corporis, n., body;
CORPSE.**
- cornū, -ūs, n., horn; wing, flank
of an army.**
- corrōdō, -rōdere, -rōsi, -rōsum**
(*cum* denoting *completeness,
rōdō gnaw*), *gnaw to pieces,
gnaw*; **CORRODE.**
- cotidīus, adv. (quot every, diēs
day), every day, daily.**
- Crassus, M. Licinius Crassus, a
celebrated Roman.**
- cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, burn.
CREMATION.**
- creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, CREATE,
elect, choose, appoint. CREA-
TION.**
- crūs, crūris, n., leg.**
- cultus, -ūs, m. (colō cultivate),
CULTURE, civilization.**
- cum, prep. w. abl., with, together
with.**
- cum, rel. adv., when, as; conj.,
since, although; cum — tum,
both — and.**
- cupiditās, -ātis, f. (cupidus de-
sirous), desire, wish, longing;
eagerness, enthusiasm; CUPID-
ITY.**
- cupidus, -a, -um (cupiō desire),
desirous, fond.**
- cupiō, cupere, cupiui and cu-
pii, cupitum, desire.**
- cūr, interrog. adv., why? where-
fore?**
- cūra, -ae, f. (quærō seek),
care.**
- Curēs, Curtum, f. pl., chief town
of the Sabines.**
- cūria, -ae, f., curia or ward:
senate-house.**
- Curiātī, -ōrum, m. pl., the name
of an Alban tribe. Three
brothers belonging to this
tribe fought with the Horatii.**
- cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (cūra
care), care for, attend to,
cause something to be done.
CURATE.**
- custōs, custōdia, m. and f.,
guard, watch. CUSTODIAN.**

D.

damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*damnum penalty*), CONDEMN.

dē, prep. w. abl., down from, from; of; about, concerning; for.

dea, -ae, f. [see 11], goddess.

dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum (*dē from, habēō have*), owe.

dē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum (*dē away, cēdō go*), go away, depart, retire.

dē-certō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*dē intensive, certō contend*), fight, contend.

decimus, -a, -um, (*decem ten*), tenth.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum (*dē intensive, capiō ensnare*), DECEIVE. DECEPTION.

dē-clārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *show, DECLARE.*

dē-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum (*dē down, away, dūcō lead*), lead down or away, withdraw, lead. DEDUCE, DEDUCT, etc.

dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*dē denoting completeness, fatigō weary*), weary completely, fatigue.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fensum, DEFEND.

dē ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (*dē from, ferō bear*), give, grant.

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, f., DEFORMITY, ugliness.

deinde, adv., then, after that.

dēiciō (or -liciō) -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (*dē down, iaciō throw*), throw or cast down. DEJECTION.

dēlēctus, -a, -um (*dēligō choose*), chosen.

dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvi, dēlētum, destroy. DELETERIOUS.

dē-liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*dē denoting completeness, librō weigh in one's mind*), weigh well in mind, DELIBERATE. DELIBERATION.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum (*dē apart, legō gather*), select, choose.

Dēmarātus, -i, m., a Corinthian, father of Tarquinius Priscus.

dē-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (*dē down, mittō let go*), let go down; capite dēmīssō, with bowed head.

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*dē intensive, mōnstrō show*), point out, show, DEMONSTRATE; declare. DEMONSTRATION.

dēni, -ae, -a, num. adj. pl., ten euch.

dēnique, adv., at last, finally.

dēns, dentis, m., tooth. DENTAL.

dē-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum (*dē down, pōnō put*), put down, lay aside, get rid of. DEPOSIT, DEPONENT.

dēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum (*dē from, rapiō seize*), plunder.

dē-scendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum (dē down, scandō go),
DESCEND.

dē-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, DESCRIBE; divide.
DESCRIPTION.

dē-signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dē intensive, signō mark), DESIGNATE, describe, mean.

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dē denoting negation, spērō hope), despair. DESPERATION.

dē-stituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum (dē away, statuō put), forsake, abandon. DESTITUTE, DESTITUTION.

dē-sum, de-esse, dē-fui (dē away, sum be), be wanting.

dē-terior, dē-terius [see 85], worse.

dē-trimentum, -ī, n. (dē-terō fr. dē away, terō rub), loss; damage, injury. DETRIMENT. DETRIMENTAL.

deus, -ī, m. [see 20], god; DEITY.

dē-vehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vēctum (dē away, vehō carry), carry away, bring.

dē-vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dē down, vorō swallow), DEVOUR, eat up.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right; dextrā (sc. manū hand), on the right. DEXTEROUS.

diciō, diciōnis, f., dominion, power.

dico, dicere, dixi, dictum, say, tell, speak; appoint; call, name;

causam dicere, to plead one's cause. DICTUM.

dictātor, -ōris, m., dictator.

diēs, diēi, m., day.

differō, differre, distuli, dilātum (dis in different directions, ferō carry), carry different ways; put off; DIFFER.

difficilis, -e (dis negative, facilis easy), DIFFICULT; impracticable.

dignitās, -ātis, f. (dignus worthy), DIGNITY, rank; honor, office.

dignus, -a, -um, worthy. DIGNIFY.

di-micō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight, contend.

dīmīcātiō, -ōnis, f, a struggle, combat.

dī-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (dis hither and thither, mittō send), DISMISS.

dī-ruō, -ruere, -rui, -rūtum (dis asunder, ruō hurl down), destroy; overthrow; raze.

dīs, m. and f.; dīte, n.; gen. dītis [dītior, dītissimus], rich.

dis-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum (dis away, cēdō go), go away, depart, leave.

dissidium, -ī, n. (dissideō fr. dis apart, sedēō sit), dissension.

dis-tribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum (dis among several, tribuō give), DISTRIBUTE, divide.

diū, diūtius, diūtissimō, adv., a long time.

dīves, gen. dīvitis, adj., rich.

Divicō, -ōnis, m., a distinguished man among the Helvetii.

dividō, -videre, -visi, -visum (*dis asunder, root vid separate*), **DIVIDE**; *separate*. **DIVISION**.

Divitiacus, -i, m., a chief of the Aedui.

divitiae, -arum, f. pl. (*dives rich*), *riches, wealth*.

dō, dare, dedi, datum, give.

doceō, docere, docui, doctum, teach, instruct; inform. DOCTOR.

dolor, doloris, m., (*doleō feel pain*), *grief, sorrow, trouble*. **DOLOROUS**.

dolus, -i, m., *fraud, deceit, stratagem*.

domō, -are, domui, domitum, subdue, conquer.

domus, -ūs and -i [*see 97*], *house*; **domi**, *at home*; **domum**, *home, homeward*; **domō**, *from home*. **HOME**.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, f. (*dubitō waver in opinion*), *doubt, hesitation*.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful. DUBIOUS.

ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. pl. (*duo two, centum hundred*), *two hundred*.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, lead, draw; suppose, consider; put off. DUCT, AQUEDUCT.

dulcis, dulce, sweet, pleasant. DULCET.

dum, conj., while, as long as; until.

Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, m., one of the Aedui.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj. [*see 108*], *two*.

dux, ducis, m. and f., *leader, guide; commander, general*.

E.

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bring up a child, EDUCATE. EDUCATION.

ēdūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum (*ex out, dūcō lead*), *lead out, lead forth. EDUCE, EDUCATION.*

effeminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*ex denoting change of nature, femina woman*), *enervate. EFFEMINATE*.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (*ex out, faciō make*), *EFFECT, accomplish*.

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum (*ex out, fundō pour*), *pour out, overflow. EFFUSION*.

Ēgeria, -ae, f., a nymph, celebrated in Roman mythology as the wife and instructress of Numa.

ego, pers. pron. [*see 112*], *I*.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum (*ex out, gradior go*), *go out, depart. EGRESS*.

ēlābor, -lābi, -lapsus sum (*ex out, lābor slip*), *glide away, escape. ELAPSE*.

ēmineō, -minere, -minui (*ex out, mineō jut*), *rise above; appear. EMINENT*.

emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, buy.
enim, conj., for.

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
out of a place, nūntiō carry a
report), divulge, report.

eō, ire, ivi, itum [see 126], go.
eō, adv., to that place, thither,
there ; eō — quō, the — the.

Ēpirus, -i, f., Epirus.

eques, equitis, m. (equus horse,
eō go), rider, horseman ; cav-
alryman ; pl., cavalry.

equester, -tris, -tre (eques horse-
man), of horsemen, of cavalry.

EQUESTRIAN.

equitātus, -ūs, m. (equitō to be a
horseman), cavalry.

equus, -i, m., horse.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum
(ex out, rapiō tear), tear out or
from, take from.

et, conj., and, even ; et — et, both
— and.

etiam, conj. (et-iam), and also,
also, even.

et-si, conj., even if, although.

Etrūria, -ae, f., a country of
Italy, modern Tuscany.

ē-vādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum
(ex out, vādō go hastily), escape,
get away.

ē-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -ver-
sum (ex out, vertō turn), turn
out ; overturn, destroy.

ē-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex out,
volō fly), fly out, fly away.

ex, ē, prep. w. abl. [see LN. IV.,
VY., 1], out of, from among ;
from ; of.

exemplum, -i, n. (eximō fr. ex
out, emō take), EXAMPLE.

ex-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum (ex out, eō
go), go out, go forth, depart ;
pass., be gone.

exerōitātiō, -ōnis, f. (exercitō to
exercise), practice.

exerōitus, -ūs, m. (exerōē exerc-
cise), army. See āgmen.

exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum (ex
out, agō drive), drive out, lead
out, spend ; aestās exācta est,
the summer is gone. EXACTION.

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
think, suppose ; believe, imagine.

exitium, -i, n. (exeō go out), de-
struction, ruin.

ex-ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
effectually, ōrō entreat), move
by entreaty ; obtain by entreaty.

expeditus, -a, -um (expediō fr.
ex away from, pēs foot), unin-
cumbered, passable. EXPEDI-
TIOUS.

ex-pellō, -pellere, -puli, -pul-
sum (ex out, pellō drive), ex-
pel, drive out.

ex-pliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
out, pliō fold), unfold, explain,
spread. EXPLICATION.

explōrātor, -ōris, m. (explōrō
explore), spy, scout.

ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
effectually, pūgnō fight), take
by assault ; storm, capture.

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
very much, spectō look for), EX-
PECT, long for ; wait. EXPEC-
TATION.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, beyond*.

ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trac-tum (*ex* out, *trahō* draw), draw out, **EXTRACT**. **EXTRACTION**.

extrēmus, -a, -um, [see 85], *furthermost, most distant*, **EXTREME**.

ex-ūrō, -ūrere, -ūssi, -ūstum (*ex* entirely, *ūrō* burn), burn up.

F.

fābula, -ae, f. (*fārī* to speak), story, **FABLE**.

facile, **facillius**, **facillimō**, adv. (*facilis* easy), easily, readily, without difficulty.

facilis, **facile** (*faciō* do, -ilis denoting capability), easy, practicable. **FACILE**.

faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factum**, do, make; incite, furnish; iter **facere**, to march, to journey.

factiō, **factiōnis**, f. (*faciō* take part with one), **FACTION**, political party.

factum, -ī, n. (*faciō* do), deed, act.

facultās, -ātis, f. (*facilis* which see), ability, opportunity. **FACULTY**.

familia, -ae, f. (*famulus* servant), household, **FAMILY**.

familiāritās, -ātis, f. (*familiāris* intimate), intimacy, friendship, **FAMILIARITY**.

famula, -ae, f., maid, maid-servant.

fauces, abl., f. sing., throat; **fau-cēs**, **faucium**, f. pl., throat.

Faustulus, -ī, m., the shepherd by whom Romulus and Remus were brought up.

faveō, **favēre**, **fāvī**, **fautum**, favor, show favor.

fēlēs and **fēlis**, **fēlis**, f., cat. **FELINE**.

fēliciter, adv. (**fēlix** happy), happily, successfully.

fēlix, gen. **fēlicis**, adj. (*fēō* produce), happy, fortunate. **FELICITOUS**.

fēmina, -ae, f., female, woman. **FEMININE**.

ferē, adv., almost, nearly.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, bear, bring, carry; endure.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron; sword.

ferus, -a, -um, wild, uncultivated; **fera**, -ae, f., wild beast.

fēstum, -ī, n., **FEAST**.

fīdēs, **fīdēī**, f. (*fīdō* trust), faith, confidence; pledge, promise; protection. **FIDELITY**.

fīlia, -ae, f. [see 11], daughter.

fīlius, -ī, m., son.

fīniō, **fīnīre**, **fīnīvī**, **fīnitum** (*fīnis* end), end, **FINISH**.

fīnis, **fīnis**, m., end, limit, boundary; pl., territory. **FINAL**.

fīnitimus, -a, -um (*fīnis* boundary), neighboring, **fīnitimī**, -ōrum, m. pl., neighbors.

fīō, **fīerī**, **factus sum** [see 120], be made; become; occur, happen.

fīrmīter, adv. (**fīrmus** firm), firmly, securely.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *demand*.

flamma, -ae, f., **FLAME**.

flēō, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētum**, *weep*.

flēns, gen. **flentis**, *weeping*.

flōs, **flōris**, m., *flower*. **FLORAL**.

flūmen, **flūminis**, n. (**fluō** *flow*), *river*.

fluō, **fluere**, **fluxi**, **fluxum**, *flow*.

FLUENT, **FLUENCY**.

fodiō, **fodere**, **fodi**, **fossam**, *dig*. **FOSSIL**.

foedus, **foederis**, n., *league*, *treaty*. **FEDERAL**.

formidō, **formidinis**, f., *fear*, *terror*.

fōrmōsitās, -ātis, f., *beauty*.

fōrtasse, adv., (**fōrs** *chance*), *perhaps*.

fōrte, adv. (**fōrs** *chance*), *accidentally*, *by chance*.

fortis, **forte**, *brave*, *bold*, *courageous*, *valiant*; *strong*.

fortiter, **fortius**, **fortissimē**, adv. (**fortis** *brave*), *bravely*, *valiantly*.

fōrtūna, -ae, f., **FORTUNE**.

forum, -i, n., *market-place*; **FORUM**; *court of justice*.

fossa, -ae, f. (**fodiō** *dig*), *ditch*, *trench*.

frāter, **frātris**, m., *brother*. **FRA-
TERNAL**.

frīgus, **frīgoris**, n., *cold*, *frost*.

frūmentārius, -a, -um (**frūmen-
tum** *corn*), *of corn*; **rēs frū-
mentāria**, *supplies*.

frūmentum, -i, n., *corn*, *grain*.

fruor, **frui**, **fructus sum**, *enjoy* [*see 104*].

fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.

fugiō, **fugere**, **fūgi**, **fugitum**, *flee*; *escape*. **FUGITIVE**.

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *put to flight*, *roul*.

fulmen, **fulminis**, n. (**fulgeō** *flash*), *thunder-bolt*, *lightning*.

FULMINATE.

fūnus, **fūneris**, n., *funeral procession*, *burial*, **FUNERAL**.

G.

Gabīnius, -i, m., *Aulus Gabinius*, a Roman consul.

Gāius Valerius Proculus, a distinguished Gaul, friend of Caesar.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*; it embraced modern France, Belgium, that part of the Netherlands south of the Rhine, the provinces of Germany west of the Rhine, and a large part of Switzerland; all this was known as **Gallia ūlterior**, *farther Gaul*, and as **Gallia trānsalpīna**, *Gaul across the Alps*, i. e. from Rome: the northern part of modern Italy was known as **Gallia citerior**, *hither Gaul*, and as **Gallia cisalpīna**, *Gaul this side the Alps*, i. e. towards Rome.

gallīna, -ae, f., *hen*.

Gallus, -i, m., a Gaul.

Garumna, -ae, f., a river of Gaul, the Garonne.

geminus, -a, -um, *double*; **geminī filii**, *twin-sons*.

gener, **generī**, m., *son-in-law*.

Genāva, -ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on Lake Lemannus, modern GENEVA.

gēns, **gentis**, f. (**gignō beget**), *nation, tribe*. GENTILE.

genus, **generis**, n., *birth, kind, race*.

Germānī, -ōrum, m. pl., THE GERMANS.

gerō, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestum**, *bear*; *carry*; *carry on, wage*; *pass.*, *happen, take place*.

gignō, **gignere**, **genuī**, **genitum**, *beget*; *bear*; *pass.*, *be born*.

glōria, -ae, f., GLORY, *renown*.

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum (**glōria glory**), *boast*, GLORY.

Gnaeus, -ī, m., *Gnaeus*.

gradus, -ūs, m. (**gradior to step**), *step, stair*. GRADE.

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.

Graecus, -a, -um, GRECIAN, GREEK.

grātia, -ae, f., (**grātus beloved, dear**), *favor*; *influence, popularity*; GRACE: pl., *thanks*.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, CONGRATULATE.

gravis, *grave, heavy, burdensome*; GRIEVOUS, *painful, severe*. GRIEF.

graviter, **gravius**, **gravissimē**, *adv. (gravis heavy), heavily; grievously, severely*.

grūs, **gruis**, m. and f., *crane (a bird)*.

H.

habēō, -ōre, -uī, -itum, HAVE, *hold*; *regard, consider*; *deliver*.

Harūdēs, -um, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany.

hasta, -ae, f., *spear, lance*.

haud, *adv.*, *not at all, by no means*.

haedus and **hoedus**, -ī, m., *kid, a young goat*.

Helvētīī, -ōrum, m. pl., an ancient people occupying a large part of the country now called Switzerland.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *of the Helvetii*.

herbidus, -a, -um (*herba grass*), *grassy*.

hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl. (*hiems winter*), *winter-quarters*; [properly an adjective with *castra* understood.] HIBERNATE.

hīc, **haec**, **hōc**, *this*; pl., *these* [see 118].

hīc, *adv. (hīc this), here, in this place*.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*hiems winter*), *pass the winter*.

hīnc, *adv. (hīc this), hence, from this place*.

Hispānia, -ae, f., SPAIN.

hodiē, *adv. (contracted fr. hōc and diē, on this day), to-day*.

homō, **hominis**, m. and f., *human being, person, man*. [See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.]

honor, **honōris**, m., HONOR.

hōra, -ae, f., HOUR.

Horātiī, -ōrum, m. pl., three Roman brothers who fought against the Curiatii.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, EXHORT, urge. HORTATORY.

hospitium, -ī, n. (hospes guest), HOSPITALITY. HOSPITAL, HOSPITABLE.

hostis, hostis, m. and f., enemy, public enemy; [inimicus is a personal enemy.] HOSTILE.

hūc, adv. (hic this), hither, to this place.

hūmānitās, -ātis, f. (hūmānus of or belonging to man), HUMANITY, refinement, culture.

I.

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, iacitum, lie.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, throw, hurl, cast.

iam, adv., now, already.

Iāniculum, -ī, n., a hill across the Tiber from Rome.

ibi, adv. (is), there, in that place; then.

ioō, icere, iolī, lotum, strike; foedus icere, to ratify or make a treaty. ICTUS.

idem, eadem, idem (is and dem. suffix dem), the same [see 118].

idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable.

igitur, conj., therefore.

ignis, -is, m., fire.

ille, illa, illud, that, he; pl., those.

immeritus, -a, -um (in negative, meritis deserving), not deserving; not deserved.

immortālis, immortalē (in negative, mortālis mortal), IMMORTAL.

immortālitās, -ātis, f. (immortālis immortal), IMMORTALITY.

impedimentum, -ī, n. (impediō fr. in in the way of, pedēs feet), hindrance, pl., baggage of an army, including beasts of burden and their drivers; [sarcinae are packs carried by the soldiers.] IMPEDIMENT.

impendeō, -pendēre, no perf. nor sup. (in over, pendeō hang), overhang; IMPEND.

imperātor, -ōris, m. (imperō command), commander-in-chief, general.

imperītus, -a, -um (in negative, perītus skilled), unskilled, inexperienced.

imperium, -ī, n. (imperō command), command; government: EMPIRE, supreme power.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in upon, parō put), give orders, order; command, rule.

impetus, -ūs, m., attack, assault. IMPETUS.

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, beseech, entreat, IMPLORE.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (in upon, pōnō place), place upon; levy upon. IMPOSE, IMPOSITION.

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in into, portō bring), bring into, IMPORT.

in, prep. w. acc. and abl.; w. acc.,

into, to, towards, against; w. abl., in, on, upon, among.

inānis, ināne, empty; vain, ineffectual.

incendō, incendere, incendi, incensum, set on fire, burn.

INCENDIARY.

incidō, -cidere, -cidi (in *into, cadō* fall), fall into or upon; chance to meet with. **INCIDENT, INCIDENTAL.**

in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in without additional force, *citō* put in quick motion), instigate, encourage; **INCITE.**

incohō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, begin.

in-colō, -colere, -colui (in *in, colō* dwell), inhabit, dwell.

incolumis, -e, unhurt, safe.

incommodum, -ī (*incommodus* fr. in negative, *commodus* convenient), inconvenience, misfortune, defeat.

in-crēdibilis, -e (in negative, *crēdō* believe, *-bilis* denoting capability), **INCREDIBLE**; extraordinary.

incursiō, -ōnis, f. (*incurrō* fr. in *into, against; currō* run), attack; **INCURSION.**

in-cōūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in against, *causa* cause), censure, blame.

inde, adv., thence, thereupon, then.

in-diō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum (in among, *diō* speak), declare, proclaim.

indignus, -a, -um (in negative, *dignus* worthy), unworthy.

indolēs, -is, f., disposition, nature.

in-dūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum (in *into, dūcō* lead), lead into; **INDUCE.**

indulgeō, indulgēre, indulsi, indultum, favor, show favor; **INDULGE.**

induō, -duere, -dūi, -dūtum, put on, dress; clothe.

inermis, -e (in negative, *arma* arms), unarmed; defenceless.

Inferior, inferius, lower. **INFERIOR** [see 85].

In-ferō, In-ferre, in-tuli, in-lātum (in *into, upon, ferō* bring) bring into or upon, make upon.

INFER, INFERENCE.

In-fluō, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxum (in *into, fluō* flow), flow into, empty. **INFLUENCE, INFLUX.**

In-frendēō, -frendēre, gnash with the teeth.

ingēns, gen. ingentis, vast, enormous, large.

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus, (in *in, gradior* go), enter.

in-haerēō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesum (in *to, in; haerēō* stick), stick or cleave to or in.

in-hiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (in *for, hiō* gape), gape for, desire.

inimicus, -a, -um, (in negative, *amicus* friendly), unfriendly, hostile; **INIMICAL.** See *hostis*.

iniciō (or -iiciō) -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (in *into, iaciō* throw),

throw into; inspire, infuse.

INJECT.

initium, -i, n. (inē fr. in upon, eō enter), beginning. INITIAL.

iniūria, -ae, f. (iniūrius fr. in negative, iūs right), INJURY, wrong; injustice, damage, insult.

in-nāscor, -nāsci, -nātus sum (in in, nāscor be born), spring up in.

inopia, -ae, f. (inopēs fr. in negative, opēs resources), want, scarcity.

inquam and inquit, defective verb, say.

inrētiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum (in in, rēte net), entangle, ensnare.

in-rideō, -ridēre, -risi, -risum (in at, rideō laugh), laugh at, deride.

inritō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, provoke, incite, IRRITATE. IRRITATION.

insidiae, -arum, f. pl., treachery, deceit. INSIDIOUS.

insignis, insigne (in upon, signum mark), remarkable, extraordinary; insigne, -is, n., sign.

insolenter, insolentius, insolentissimē, adv., contrary to custom.

instituō, -stituerē, -stitui, -stitūtum, appoint, INSTITUTE; train up, instruct.

institutum, -i, n., custom; INSTITUTION.

in-struō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum (in without additional force, struō arrange),

arrange, form, draw up. INSTRUCT, INSTRUCTIVE, INSTRUCTION.

intellegō -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum (inter between, legō choose), understand, know. INTELLIGENT.

inter, prep. w. acc., between, among.

inter-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum (inter between, cēdō go), intervene. INTERCEDE, INTERCESSION.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum (inter between, capiō take), usurp; take away fraudulently; INTERCEPT.

interficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fecitum (inter between, faciō make), kill, slay.

interimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēpitum, kill, put to death.

interneciō, -ōnis, f. (internecō fr. inter completely, necō kill), slaughter.

inter-rēgnum, -i, n. (inter between, rēgnum reign), INTERREGNUM.

inter-sum, -esse, -fui (inter between, sum be), be between, intervene.

inter-vāllum, -i, n. (inter between, vāllum rampart), INTERVAL, distance.

intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, enter.

in-tueor, -tuēri, -tuitus sum (in upon, at; tueor look), look at or upon.

intus, adv., within.

in-veniō, -venire, -vēni, -ven-

tum (in upon, *veniō* come), come upon, find.

invidia, -ae, f. (*invidēō* look as-
kance at), ENVY, hatred.

invītus, -a, -um, unwilling; **sē**
invītō, against his will.

ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum** [see **118**], self;
himself, herself, itself; very;
ipse rēx, the very king.

is, **ea**, **id**, he, her, it; this; that
see [**113**].

Isocratēs, -is, m., a celebrated
Greek orator and rhetorician.

ita, adv. (**is**), so, thus, in this
manner, as follows.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy.

Italus, -a, -um, Italian.

ita-que, conj., and so, accord-
ingly, therefore.

item, adv. (**is**), in like manner,
likewise.

iter, **itineris**, n. (*eō* go), journey;
march; way, road, route; **iter**
facere, to march. **ITINERANT**.

iterum, adv. (**is**), again, a second
time.

Iuba, -ae, m., Juba, a king of
Numidia.

iubeō, **iubēre**, **iussī**, **iūssum**,
command, order.

iūdicium, -ī, n. (*iūdex* judge),
judgment; trial; sentence; de-
cision. **JUDICIAL**.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*iūs*
law, *dicō* point out), **JUDGE**;
determine, conclude; think. **AD-**
JUDICATE.

ingum, -ī, n. (*iungō* join), yoke;
ridge, *summū*: in war a frame

made of two upright spears
supporting a third in a hori-
zontal position, under which
a conquered army was made
to pass in token of subjection.

iumentum, -ī, n., beast of burden
as a horse or an ox.

Iuppiter and **Iūpiter**, **Iovis**, m.,
son of Saturn, father of gods
and king of men.

Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura, a chain
of mountains extending from
the Rhine to the Rhone and
forming the western boundary
of Switzerland.

iūs, **iūris**, n., right, law. **JURIST**.
iūs-iūrandum, **iūris-iūrandī**, n.,
oath [see **110**].

iūssū, m. abl., (*iubeō* command),
by command.

iūstus, -a, -um (*iūs* law, suffix -*tus*
denoting fulness), **JUST**, right.

iuvō, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtum**, help,
aid, assist. **AD-JUTANT**.

L.

L., abbreviation of *Lucius*, a Ro-
man praenomen.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., one of Caesar's
lieutenants in the Gallic war.

labor, **labōris**, m., **LABOR**, toil.

lacrima, -ae, f., tear.

lacus, -ūs, m., LAKE.

laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum (*laetus*
joyful), rejoice, exult.

laetus, -a, -um, joyful.

laniō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tear in
pieces.

lapis, lapidis, m., stone. LAPIDARY.

laqueus, -i, m., noose, snare.

Lārentia, -ae, f. See Acca.

largitiō, -ōnis, f. (largior give bountifully), liberality.

lātē, adv. (lātus broad), widely, extensively.

Latinus, -i, m., an ancient king of the Laurentes, a people of Italy.

latrō, latrōnis, m., robber.

lātrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bark, bark at.

latus, lateris, n., side; flank.

LATERAL.

lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide; large, spacious. LATITUDE.

Lāvinia, -ae, f., daughter of Latinus and second wife of Aenēas.

Lāvinium, -i, n., a city in Italy built by Aenēas.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f. (lēgō send on an embassy), embassy. LEGATION.

lēgātus, -i, m. (lēgō send as a representative), ambassador, envoy, LEGATE; lieutenant.

legiō, legiōnis, f. (legō levy), LEGION, a body of infantry varying in number from 4000 to 6000, and generally accompanied by about 300 cavalrymen.

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, choose.

Lemannus, -i, m., Lake Lemman or Geneva in Switzerland.

lēnitās, -ātis, f., smoothness.

leō, leōnis, m., LION.

Lepidus, -i, m., M. Aemilius Lepidus, consul with Caesar in 46 B. C.

lētālis, -e (lētum death; suffix -ālis, belonging to), fatal, deadly.

lēvitās, -ātis, f. (lēvis smooth), smoothness.

levitās, -ātis, f. (levis light), lightness. LEVITY.

lēx, lēgis, f., law. LEGAL.

liber, libera, liberum, free.

liberālitās, -ātis, f. (liberālis fr. liber free), LIBERALITY, generosity.

liberē, liberius, adv. (liber free), freely, unreservedly.

liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., children.

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (liber free), to free, LIBERATE.

libertās, -ātis, f., freedom, liberty, permission.

liceor, licōrī, licitus sum, bid at an auction.

licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, it is permitted, allowed. one may [see 128 and LN. LXIX., Examples 2-5].

licet, although.

Lingonēs, -um, m. pl., a people in Northeastern Gaul.

lingua, -ae, f., tongue; LANGUAGE. LINGUIST, LINGUAL.

Liscus, -i, m., a magistrate among the Aedui.

littera and litera, -ae, f. (linō besmear), LETTER of the alphabet; pl., letter, epistle. LITERATURE.

locus, -i, m. [pl. *looi* and *loca*],
place. LOCAL, LOCALITY.
longē, **longius**, **longissimē**,
adv. (*longus long*), *far, by far*;
often used to strengthen superlatives.
longissimē, adv., *very far*.
longitūdō, -inis, f. (*longus long*),
length. LONGITUDE.
longus, -a, -um, *long*.
loquor, **loquī**, **locūtus sum**,
speak, talk. LOQUACIOUS.
lōrica, -ae, f., *corselet*.
Lūcius, -i, m., a Roman praenomen.
Lūcrētia, -ae, f., a Roman matron, wife of Collatinus.
lūdus, -i, m., *play, game*.
lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf*.
lupus, -i, m., *wolf*.
lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *review*.
lūx, **lūcis**, f. (*lūceō shine*), *light*.
lyra, -ae, f., *lyre*.

M.

M., abbreviation of *Marcus*, a Roman praenomen.
M', abbreviation of *Mānius*, a Roman praenomen.
Macedonia, -ae, f., *Macedonia*.
magis, **māximē**, adv., *more, rather*.
magister, -tri, m. (fr. *mao*, root of *māgnus*, signifying to be great), *master, chief, commander*.
magistrātus, -ūs, m. (*magister*), *magistrate*.

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. (*māgnus great*), *size, MAGNITUDE*.
māgnus, -a, -um, *great, large, big, mighty*. MAGNI-
māiestās, -ātis, f., MAJESTY, *dignity*.
māior, **māius**, gen. **māiōris** (comp. of *māgnus*) *larger, greater, bigger*; **māiōrēs**, -um, m. pl., *ancestors*. MAJOR.
male, **pōius**, **pessimē**, adv., *badly, ill, wickedly*.
maledīcō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum (*male ill, dico speak*), *speak ill of, revile, rail at*; [with dat.] MALEDICTION.
maleficium, -i, n. (*maleficus doing evil*), *mischievous, damage*.
maleficus, -a, -um (*male wickedly, facio do*), *wicked*; **maleficus**, -i, m., *an evil-doer*.
mālō, **mālle**, **mālui** (*magis more, volō be willing*), *be more willing, choose, rather, prefer* [see 125].
malus, -a, -um, *bad, wicked, evil, destructive*.
mandātum, -i, n. (*mandō fr. manus hand, dō put*; *put in one's hand*), *charge, order, command*. MANDATE.
maneō, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsūm**, *stay, RE-MAIN*.
Manius, -i, m. See **M'**.
manus, -ūs, f., *hand*; *force of soldiers*. MANUFACTURE.
Marcellus, -i, m., *C. Claudius Marcellus, consul in 49 B. C.*
Marcus, -i, m., a Roman name.
Mārcus, -i, m. See **M.**

mare, maris, n., sea.
maritus, -i, m. (marita wife), belonging to a wife, husband.
Mārs, Mārtis, m., son of Jupiter and Juno, and god of war.
MARTIAL.
massa, -ae, f., MASS, lump.
māter, mātris, f., MOTHER; *matron.*
mātrimōnium, -i, n., (*māter mother*), marriage; in *mātrimōnium dare*, to give in marriage; in *mātrimōnium dūcere*, to marry. **MATRIMONY.**
Mātrona, -ae, m., a river in Gaul, the modern Marne.
mātūrē, adv. (mātūrus ripe), early, soon.
mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, has- ten, make haste.
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, MATURE.
Mauritānia, -ae, f. Mauritania, a district of northern Africa.
mediocriter, adv. (mediocris fr. *medius* denoting a middle state), moderately; *nōn mediocriter*, exceedingly.
medius, -a, -um, in the middle or midst; in the middle of; middle, central.
mel, mellis, n., honey. MELLI- FLUENT.
melior, melius, gen. meliōris (comp. of *bonus*), better.
meminī, meminisse, remember [see 127].
memor, gen. memoris, mindful of, mindful.
memoria, -ae, f. (memor mind-

ful of), **MEMORY, recollection,** remembrance.
mēns, mentis, f., mind. See animus. **MENTAL.**
mēnsis, mēnsis, m., month.
mercātor, -ōris, m. (mercōr to trade), trader, **MERCHANT.**
mercēs, mercēdis, f., wages, hire, reward, price.
mereō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, deserve, acquire.
meritum, -i, n., desert. MERIT.
Messāla, -ae, m., a Roman name.
mōtior, mōtiri, mōnsus sum, MEASURE, deal out.
Mettius, -i, m., Mettius Fufetius, an Alban general, put to death by Tullus Hostilius.
meus, -a, -um, my, mine.
miles, militis, m., soldier.
militāris, -e (miles soldier, -āris belonging to), **MILITARY; rēs militāris, military science.**
mille, pl. milia, milium, thou- sand [see 108].
miluus or milvus, -i, m., kite (a bird).
minimē [parvē, minus, mini- mē], adv., least, by no means.
minus, -a, -um, least [see 85].
minor, minus, smaller, less [see 85]; *minor nātū, younger.*
minuō, minuere, minui, minū- tum, **DI-MINISH. DIMINU-** TION.
minus, adv., less. See minimē.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, AD- MIRE; wonder at.

mīrus, -a, -um (*mīror wonder at*),
wonderful.

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, pitiable, lamentable*, MISERABLE.

Mithridātēs, -is, m., *Mithridates*, a king of Pontus.

mittō, mittere, misi, missum,
send.

moenia, moenium, n. pl., *walls of a city.*

molliō, -ire, -ivi, -itum (*mollis soft*), *soften, subdue.*

moneō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *remind; advise*, AD-MONISH.

mōns, mōntis, m., MOUNTAIN, MOUNT.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*mōnstrum a divine omen*), *show, point out.* DE-MONSTRATE.

morbus, -i, m., *disease.* MOR-BID.

morior, morī and moriri, mortuus sum, *die.*

moror, -āri, -ātus sum, *tarry, delay, hinder.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.* MOR-TAL.

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, manner; usage; pl., character.* MORAL.

moveō, movēre, movi, mōtum,
MOVE; *excite: castra movēre, to break up camp.*

muller, mulieris, f., *woman.*

multitūdō, -inis, f. (*multus much*), MULTITUDE.

multus, -a, -um, *much, many a; pl., many.* MULTI-PLY.

Munda, -ae, f., *a town in Spain.*

mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itum (*moenia wall, rampart*), *fortify.*

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. (*mūniō fortify*), *fortification.* MUNITION.

mūnus, mūneris, n., *gift, reward.* RE-MUNER-ATE.

mūs, mūris, m., *mouse.*

mūsculus, -i, m. (*mūs*), *a little mouse.*

N.

nam, conj., *for.*

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born.* NASCENT.

nātū, abl. sing. m., *by birth, minor nātū, younger.*

nātūra, -ae, f. (*nāscor be born*),
NATURE.

nātus, -a, -um (*nāscor be born*),
old.

nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship.* NAV-AL, NAVI-GATE.

nō, adv., *not; conj., that not, that.*

ne, interrog. particle; is appended to first word of the question and asks for information.

nec. See neque.

necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *kill, put to death.*

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *deny, refuse.* NEGATION.

negōtium, -i, n. (*nec not, ōtium leisure*), *business; quid negōti? what business?* NEGOTIATE.

nēmō, nēminis, m. and f. (*ne not, homō a man*), *no one, nobody.*

nepōs, nepōtis, m., *grandson.*

NEPOTISM.

Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune, god of the sea.*

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means.*

neque, nec, conj., *and not; neque—neque, neither—nor.*

nervus, -ī, m., *NERVE, vigor, energy.*

nēsciō, -īre, -īvi and -īl, -ītum (*ne not, sciō know*), *not know.*

neuter, neutra, neutrum (*ne not, uter one or the other*), *neither* [see 24]. **NEUTER.**

nihil, n. indecl., *nothing.*

nihilō minus, adv., *none the less, nevertheless.*

nihilum, -ī, n., *nothing.*

Nīlus, -ī, m., *the river Nile.*

nisi, conj. (ne not, si if), *if not, unless, except.*

nītor, nīti, nīsus or nīxus sum, *strive, endeavor.*

nōbilis, nōbile (*nōscō know, -bilis denoting capability*), *well known*, **NOBLE**, *of high rank.*

nōbilitās, -ātis, f. (nōbilis noble), **NOBILITY.**

nōlō, nōlle, nōluf (*ne not, volō willing*) *be unwilling.*

nōmen, nōminis, n., **NAME.**

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōnne, interrog. particle, *expects the answer yes.*

nōn nūllus, -a, -um, some one; nōnnūlli, -ōrum, m. pl., *several persons.*

Norēia, -ae, f., *a town in Noricum.*

Noricus, -a, -um, of Noricum, *a country lying between the Upper Danube and Eastern Alps.*

nōs, pers. pron., *we* [see 112].

noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours.

notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*nota, a mark*), *mark.* **NOTE, NOTATION.**

Noviodūnum, -ī, n., *the name of several cities in Gaul.*

novus, -a, -um, new, strange; recent, fresh; novae rēs, revolution. āgmen novissimum, *the rear.* **NOVEL.**

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūbēs, nūbis, f., *cloud.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *veil herself for the bridegroom, marry* [of a bride]. **NUPTIAL.**

nūdus, -a, -um, naked, bare; NUDE.

nūllus, -a, -um (*ne not, ūllus any one*), *no, none, not any one.*

num, whether: *in direct questions to be omitted in translation.*

Numa, -ae, m., *Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.*

numerus, -ī, m., **NUMBER.**

Numitor, -ōris, m., *father of Rhea Silvia.*

numquam and nunquam, adv., (*ne not, umquam ever*), *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūncupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to name.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*nūn-*

tus messenger), AN-NOUNCE,
report.

nūper, adv. (novus new), newly,
recently.

nūtrīō, -īre, -īvi, -itum, nourish.
NUTRITION, NUTRIMENT.

nympha, -ae, f., a nymph; the
nymphs were demi-goddesses
inhabiting the sea, rivers,
fountains, woods, trees, and
mountains.

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., on account of,
for.

ob-eō, -īre, -īvi and -īi, -itum
(*ob towards, eō go*), *die.*

ob-errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ob
about, errō wander), *wander*
about, wander.

obiciō, -icere, -īcī, -iectum
(*ob before, at; iaciō throw*),
throw before, at, or against;
throw up. OBJECT, OBJEC-
TION.

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus
sum, forget.

oboediō, -īre, -īvi, -itum (ob
without any additional force,
audiō listen to), *listen to, obey;*
be subject to. OBEDIENT.

ob-ruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum (ob
without additional force, ruō
cast down with violence), *over-*
whelm; cover.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ob
on account of, sacra sacrifices),
beseech, implore.

obses, obsidis, m. (obsideō stay),
hostage.

ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum (ob
with no additional force, tes-
tor bear witness), *conjure, be-*
seech.

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum (ob with no additional
force, teneō hold), hold, OB-
TAIN, possess.

obviam, adv., in the way; ob-
viam ire or fierī, to meet.

occāsus, -ūs, m. (occidō fall),
going down; sōlis occāsū, at
sunset.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum
(*ob against, caedō cut, strike*),
kill, slay.

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hide,
conceal. OCCULT.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ob
with no additional force, capiō
take), *seize, take possession of,*
OCCUPY. OCCUPATION.

occurrō, -currere, -cucurri and
-curri, -cursum (ob towards,
currō run), meet. OCCUR, OC-
CURRENCE.

Ōceanus, -ī, m., OCEAN.

Ocelum, -ī, n., a town in the
western part of Cisalpine
Gaul.

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth. Oc-
TAVE.

octōdecim, num. adj., eighteen.

octōgintā, num. adj., eighty.

oculus, -ī, m., eye. OCULIST.

ōdī, ōdisse, hate [see 127].

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēn-

sum, OFFEND, wound. OFFENCE.
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum (ob towards, ferō bring), OFFER, present.
officium, -ī, n. (opēs aid, faciō render), service, duty; obedience, allegiance. OFFICE.
omnīnō, adv. (omnis all), altogether, at all.
omnis, omne, all, every, the whole. OMNI-SCIENCE, OMNI-POTENT, OMNI-PRESENT.
onus, oneris, n., load, burden; weight; size. ONEROUS.
opis, opem, ope [nom., dat., and voc., sing. not used; pl. entire]; pl., **opēs, opum, opibus, etc.; f., power; means, resources.**
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, it behooves, it is necessary, one ought [see 128 and LN. LXIX., Examples 6-8].
oppidum, -ī, n., town, walled town.
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ob against, pugnō fight), attack, besiege, assault.
optō, -ōnis, f. (optō choose), choice, OPTION.
opus, operis, n., work, labor.
orātiō, orātiōnis, f. (orō speak), speech, harangue; ORATION.
orātōr, orātōris, m. (orō plead), ORATOR.
orbis, -is, m., the circle of the world, earth, world.
ordinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ordō arranging), arrange, order

Orgetorix, -igis, m., the noblest and richest among the Helvetii.
oriōns, gen. orientis (part. fr. orior), rising. ORIENT.
orior, oriri, ortus sum, rise, arise, begin.
ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. (ōrnō adorn), ORNAMENT, distinction.
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ōs mouth), beseech, beg; implore, pray.
ōs, ōris, n., mouth; face. ORAL
os, ossis, n., bone. OSSIFY.
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum (ob before, tendō spread), show, point out, exhibit. OSTENSIBLE.
Ōstia, -ae, f., a town at the mouth of the Tiber, built by Ancus Marcius.
ōstium, -ī, n., mouth of a river.
ōvum, -ī, n., egg. OVAL.

P.

P., abbreviation of Publius, a Roman praenomen.
pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., foraging.
pābulum, -ī, n. (pāscō feed), food.
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pāx peace), PACIFY; subdue.
paene, adv., almost, nearly.
pāgus, -ī, district, canton.
Palaepharsālus, -ī, f. Old Pharsalus, a town of Thessaly.
pār, gen. paris, equal, like. PAR.
parātus, -a, -um (part. of parō prepare), PRE-PARED, ready.

parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī** and **parsi**, **parcitum** and **parsum** (**parcus** spare), to spare.

pariō, **parere**, **peperi**, **paritum** and **partum**, bear, bring forth; **ōvum parere**, to lay an egg.

pars, **partis**, f., **PART**, share; side; direction.

parvus, -a, -um [comp. **minor**, superl., **minimus**], small, little, insignificant.

pāscor, **pāsci**, **pāstus sum**, feed, graze.

passus, -ūs, m. (**pandō** stretch out the feet), step, **PACE**; as a measure of length, about five feet.

pāstor, **pāstōris**, m. (**pāscō** feed), shepherd. **PASTOR**.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (**pateō** be open, **faciō** make), make open, open.

pater, **patris**, m., **FATHER**.

paternus, -a, -um (**pater** father), **PATERNAL**.

patior, **pati**, **passus sum**, let, allow; suffer. **PASSION**, **PASSIVE**.

patria, -ae, f. (**pater** father), native land, fatherland. **PATRIAL**.

pauci, -ae, -a, adj. pl., few.

paulus, -a, -um, little; **paulō**, n. abl. sing., by a little, little.

pāvō, -ōnis, m. and f., peacock.

pāx, **pācis**, f., **PEACE**. **PACIFY**.

pellis, **pellis**, f., skin.

pellō, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, drive out or away, banish; rout.

RE-PULSE.

penna, -ae, f., feather. **PEN**.

per, prep. w. acc., through; by means of, by.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum (**per** through, **quatiō** strike), strike through, strike. **PERCUSSION**.

per-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (**per** through, **dō** put), lose. **PERDITION**.

per-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (**per** through, **dūcō** lead), lead through or to, conduct; **fossam perducere**, to extend or make a trench.

per-eō, -ī or -ivī, -itum, disappear, perish.

per-facilis, -e (**per** very, **facilis** easy), very easy.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (**per** completely, **faciō** make), accomplish. **PERFECTION**.

perfidia, -ae, f. (**perfidus** one who breaks his promise), **PERFIDY**.

periculōsus, -a, -um (**periculum** danger; suffix -ōsus full of), dangerous.

periculum, -ī, n., danger, risk, **PERIL**.

peritus, -a, -um, skilful, experienced.

per-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīsum (**per** through, **mittō** let go), **PERMIT**, allow. **PERMISSION**.

per-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (**per** completely, **moveō** move), prevail upon.

perniciōs, perniciōsī, f. (*pernecō* fr. *per* completely, *neō* kill), ruin, destruction. **PERNICIOUS.**
perpaucī, -ae, -a (*per* very, *paucī* few), very few.
per-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (*per* perseveringly, *sequor* follow), pursue. **PERSECUTE.**
perseverō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*perseverus* very strict), **PERSEVERE, continue.**
per-suādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm (*per* thoroughly, *suādeō* advise), **PERSUADE, prevail upon. PERSUASION.**
per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (*per* thoroughly, *terreō* frighten), thoroughly frighten, terrify.
pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (*per* thoroughly, *teneō* hold, lay hold of), extend; reach, tend; **PERTAIN, belong.**
per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*per* thoroughly, *turbō* disturb), greatly disturb, **DISTURB. PERTURB, PERTURBATION.**
per-veniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum (*per* quite through, *veniō* come), come through, come to; arrive; reach.
pēs, pedis, m., foot. PEDAL.
petō, petere, petivī and petī, petītum, ask, request; beseech, beg for; seek; attack. PETITION.
Petrēius, -ī, m., M. Petreius, a friend of Pompey the Great.
petulantia, -ae, f. (petulāns

saucy), sauciness; insolence.

PETULANCE.

Pharnacēs, -is, m., Pharnaces, a king of Pontus.

pilleus, -ī, m., hat; cap.

pilum, -ī, n., javelin.

Pisō, -ōnis, m., a Roman consul.

pīstrinum, -ī, n. (pīstor miller), mill.

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, PLEASE; placet, impers., it pleases, it seems good.

plaga, -ae, f., hunting-net, toil.

plōbs, plōbis, f., commons, common people.

plūrimus, -a, -um, [superl. of multus], most.

plūs, plūris [compar. of multus, see 85], more.

poena, -ae, f., punishment. PENAL.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum (*insep. prefix pot largely, liceor offer*), promise.

Pompēius, -ī, m., Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, the Triumvir, Pompey the Great.

pō : ō, pōnere, posuī, positum, place, put; castra pōnere, to pitch a camp. POSITION.

pōns, pōntis, m., bridge.

Pontus, -ī, m., Pontus, a division of Asia Minor.

populātiō, -ōnis, f., ravaging.

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum (populus people), ravage, lay waste.

DE-POPULATE.

populus, -ī, m., PEOPLE; pl., nations, tribes.

porta, -ae, f., *gate*. **PORTAL**.

portendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *foretell, predict, presage; betoken*; **PORTEND**.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry, bear*, **TRANS-PORT**. **EX-PORT**.

portōrium, -ī, n. (**portō** *carry*), *duty paid on goods imported or exported*.

poscō, **poscere**, **poposci**, no sup., *demand*.

possessiō, -ōnis, f. (**possideō** *possess*), **POSSESSION**.

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sesum (**potis** *powerful, sedeō* *sit*), *be master of*; **POSSESS**.

possum, **posse**, **potui** (**potis** *able, sum* *be*), *be able, can* [see **ES**].

post, prep. w. acc., *after*.

postea, adv. (**post** *after, ea* *that*), *after that, afterwards*.

post-eā-quam, *after that, after*.

posterus, -a, -um [comp., **posterior**; superl., **postrēmus** and **postumus**], *following, ensuing, succeeding*; **posterō diē**, *on the following day*; **posterī, -ōrum**, m. pl., *descendants*.

post-quam, conj., *after, as soon as*.

postridiē, adv. (**posterō** *following, diē* *on the day*), *on the following day*.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask for, demand*.

potēns, gen. **potentis** (**possum** *be able*), *able, powerful, influential*. **POTENT**.

potestās, -ātis, f. (**potēns** *able*), *ability, power; opportunity*; **allicui potestātem facere**, *to give any one an opportunity*.

potior, **potiri**, **potitus sum** (**potis** *able*), *acquire, obtain, get possession of*.

potius, adv., *rather, sooner*.

prae-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (**prae** *before, cēdō* *go*), *surpass, excel*: **PRECEDE**. **PRECEDENCE**, **PRECEDENT**.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**praiceps** *headlong*), *throw violently, throw*. **PRECIPITATE**.

praecipuē, adv. (**praecipuus** fr. **praecipio** fr. **prae** *before, capio* *take*), *especially, chiefly*.

praecipuus, -a, -um, adj., *chief, principal*.

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**prae** *publicly, dicō* *tell*), *proclaim, declare; boast*. **PREDICATE**.

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (**prae** *before, ferō* *bear*), **PREFER**.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (**prae** *over, faciō* *place*), *place over, put in command of*.

prae-mittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum (**prae** *forward*: **mittō** *send*), *send forward*.

praemium, -ī, n. (**prae** *beyond others, emō* *take*), *profit, reward*. **PREMIUM**.

prae-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum (**prae** *before, first*; **pōnō** *put*), *put before or first*; **PREFER**. **PREPOSITION**.

praesēpe, -is, n. (*praesēpiō* to fence in front), *manger*

praesidium, -ī, n. (*praesideō* fr. *prae* before, *sedeō* sit), *defence, protection; guard, garrison.*

prae-stō, -stāre, -stiti, -stitum and **-stātum** (*prae* before, *stō* stand), *stand before, excel; sē praestāre, to show one's self.*

prae-sum, -esse, fui (*prae* over, *sum* be), *be over, rule over, be in command of.*

praeter, prep. w. acc. (*prae* before and suffix *-ter*), *past, by; besides, except.*

praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum (*prae-ter* by, *eō* go), *go by. PRE-TERIT.*

praeter-quam, adv., except.

praetor, praetōris, m., praetor, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to a consul and elected annually.

praetōrius, -ī, m., an expraetor.

prātum, -ī, n., meadow.

precī, precem, prece [nom. and gen. sing. not used]. pl., **pre-cēs, precum, etc., request, prayer.**

premō, premere, pressi, pres-sum, PRESS, press upon. OP-PRESSION.

pretium, -ī, n., worth, value, price. AP-PRECIATE.

pridiō, adv., on the day before.

primō, adv. (primus) at first.

primum, adv. (primus), at first; quam primum, as soon as possible.

primus, -a, -um [see 85], *first; primum (āgmen), the van of an army. PRIME, PRIMAL, PRIMARY.*

princeps, gen. principis, adj. (*primus* first, *capiō* take), *first, chief; princeps, -ipis, m., chief, leader. PRINCE, PRINCIPAL.*

principātus, -ūs, m. (princeps chief), first place; pre-eminence; principātum tenēre, to be at the head.

prior, prius [superl. *primus*, see 85], *the former; first.*

Priscus, -ī, m., a surname of the elder Tarquin.

prīstinus, -a, -um, former; PRIS-TINE.

priusquam, adv., before.

privātim, adv. (privus single), as a private citizen.

privātus, -a, -um, (part. of privō deprive), PRIVATE.

prō, prep. w. abl., before, for, instead of.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (probus good), show; PROVE. PRO-BATION.

Procās, -ae, m. See Silvius.

prō-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī (prō forward, cēdō go), go forth, PROCEED, advance. PROCES-SION.

procul, adv. (procellō drive forward), afar off, far.

prō-cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (prō for, cūrō care), care for, take care of, manage. PROCURE.

prōdigium, -ī, n. (prō *beforehand*, root *dic* *point out*), **PRODIGY**.

proelium, -ī, n., *battle*.

profectiō, -ōnis, f. (**proficiscor** *set out*), *departure*.

proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus sum (prō *forwards*, *faciō* *put one's self*), *set out, depart; go, march, travel*.

pro-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgi (prō *before*, *fugiō* *flee*), *flee before, flee*.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitum (prō *in front*, *habeō* *hold*), *restrain, prevent, keep from; PROHIBIT. PROHIBITION*.

prōicio (or -iiciō) -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (prō *forward*, *iaciō* *throw*), *throw forward, cast away; sē prōicere*, *to throw one's self forward or down. PROJECT.*

prō-moveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum (prō *forward*, *moveō* *move*), *move forward, advance. PROMOTION.*

prope, **propius**, **proximē**, adv., *near, almost*.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (prō *perus* *speedy*), *hasten*.

propinquus, -ī, m. (**prope** *not far, hinc hence*), *relative; propinqua*, -ae, f., *kinswoman. PROPINQUITY.*

propior, **propius** [*superl. propius*, see 85], *nearer*.

prō-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum (prō *before*, *pōnō* *place*), *expose to view: PROPOSE. PROPOSAL, PROPOSITION.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of*.

propter-eā, adv., *for this reason*.

propterea quod, *because*.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectum (prō *forwards*, *speciō* *look*), *look forwards; look out for. PROSPECT, PROSPECTIVE.*

prō-sum, **prōd-esse**, **prō-fui** (prō(a) *for*, *sum* *be*), *be for, be useful; benefit, profit*.

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*.

proximē, adv. [*positive prope*, compar. **propius**], *very near, very recently, last*.

proximus, -a, -um [see 85], *next, nearest, ensuing, last. PROXIMITY, APPROXIMATE.*

Ptolemaeus, -ī, *Ptolemy, a king of Egypt*.

pūblicē, adv. (**pūblicus** fr. **populus** *people*), *in the name of the state*.

Pūblius, -ī, m., *a Roman name*.

pudor, **pudōris**, m. (*pudeō* *feel shame*), *shame, feeling of shame*.

puella, -ae, f., *girl*.

puer, **puerī**, m., *boy. PUERILE.*

pueritia, -ae, f. (**puer** *boy*), *boyhood, childhood*.

pūgna, -ae, f., *battle. PUGNACIOUS.*

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight*.

pulcher, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** (*poliō* *polish*), *beautiful*.

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -itum (*poena* *punishment*), **PUNISH.**

pūpillus, -ī, m., (*pūpalus* a little boy), PUPIL, ward.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think, believe.*

Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, *Pyrenean*; **Pŷrēnaei mōntēs**, the *Pyrenees*.

Q.

quā, adv. (*quī*) *where.*

quadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um (*quadrāgintā* forty), *fortieth.*

quadrāgintā, num. adj. indecl. (*quattuor* four), *forty.*

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī** and **quaesī**, **quaesītum**, *see, ask*, IN-QUIRE. IN-QUEST, IN-QUISITION.

quālis, **quāle**, *of what sort*; *as.*

quam, conj. and adv., *than*; *as.*

quamobrem, adv., *on account of which thing*; *for which reason*; *wherefore.*

quam-quam, conj., *although.*

quam-vīs, conj. (*quam as, vīs you will*), *as you will*; *however much*; *although.*

quantus, -a, -um, *how much*; *how great*; *as*; **quantum bonī**, *how much good.*

quārē, adv. (abl. of *quae* and *rēs*), *for which thing, for which.*

quartus, -a, -um (*quattuor* four), *fourth.* QUART.

quattuor, num. adj. indecl., *four.*

-que, conj., and [see LN. XXIII., VY., 1].

queror, **querī**, **questus sum**, *complain.* QUERULOUS.

quia, adv., *because.*

quī, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what*; *that* [see 114].

quī, **quae**, **quod** [interrog. pronoun used adjectively, see 116], *which? what? what sort of a? what kind of a?*

quid, *why?* [see LN. XCII., NOTE 1].

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**; gen. *cūiusdam*; [indef. pron. declined like *quī*], *a certain.*

quidem, adv., *indeed*; *nē* — **quidem**, *not — even.*

quīn, conj. (*quī by which, nē not*), *but that, that not.*

quīndecim, num. adj. indecl. (*quīnque* five, *decem* ten), *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a (*quīnque* five, *centum* hundred), *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a (*quīnque* five), *five each.*

quis, **quae**, **quid**, interrog. pron., *who? what?* [see 116].

quis, indef. pronoun, *anybody, anything* [see 116].

quisquam, **quaequam**, **quidquam** or **quicquam**; gen. *cūiusquam*; [indef. pron. declined like *quis*], *any one, anything, any.*

quō, adv., *that, in order that.*

quod, conj., *because, that.*

quō modo, adv. (*quī what, mo*

du manner), in *what* manner,
by *what* means, *how*.
quoque, conj., also.

R.

rādix, **rādicis**, f., root; **rādix**
or **rādicēs mōntis**, the foot of
a mountain. RADISH.

rapīna, -ae, f. (**rapīō** seize), *plun-*
dering; **RAPINE**.

rapīō, **rapere**, **rapui**, **raptum**,
seize, plunder. RAPTURE.

raptor, -ōris, m. (**rapīō** seize),
one who seizes; *robber*.

Rauraci, -ōrum, m., a people in
Northeastern Gaul, neighbors
of the Helvetii.

re-bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *re-*
volt, rebel.

recēns, gen. **recentis**, **RECENT**,
fresh, new.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum
(*re back, capiō take*), *take back*;
RECEIVE; **sē recipere**, *to be-*
take one's self, withdraw. **RE-**
CEPTION.

red-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,
(*re(d) back again, dō give*),
return. **RENDER**, **RENDITION**.

red-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum (*re(d)*
back, eō go), *go back, return*.

redimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptum
(*re(d) back, emō buy*), *buy back,*
release, ransom; *purchase*;
hire, farm. **REDEEM**, **REDEMP-**
TION.

reditō, -ōnis, f. (**redeō** go back),
going back, return.

re-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duo-
tum (*re back, dūcō lead*), *lead*
back, lead. **REDUCE**, **REDUC-**
TION.

re-ferō, -ferre, **rettuli**, -lātum (*re*
back, ferō bear), *bear or bring*
back, restore. **REFER**, **RELATE**.

re-fluō, -fluere, no perf. nor sup.
(*re back, fluō flow*), *flow back*.
REFLUENT, **REFLUX**.

regiō, -ōnis, f., **REGION**.

rēgius, -a, -um (**rēx** king), *royal*.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**rē-**
gnum rule), *reign, rule*.

rēgnum, -ī (**regō** to rule), *royal*
power, sovereignty; government;
kingdom.

regredior, -gredi -gressus sum
(*re back, gradior go*), *return*.

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (*re*
back, iaciō throw), *throw back,*
hurl back. **REJECT**, **REJEC-**
TION.

religiō, -ōnis, f., **RELIGION**, *sanc-*
tity.

re-liquō, -linquere, -liqui, -lio-
tum (*re behind, liquō leave*),
leave behind, leave; *quit, abandon*.
RELINQUISH.

reliquus, -a, -um (**relinquō** let *re-*
main), *remaining, rest of*.

re-maneō, -manēre, -mānsi,
-mānsus (*re behind, maneō*
stay), *stay behind*, **REMAIN**.

reminiscor, **reminisci**, *recall to*
mind, recollect. **REMINISCENCE**.

re-moveō, -movēre, -mōvi,
-mōtum (*re back, moveō move*),
REMOVE. **REMOTE**.

Remus, -i, m., twin brother of Romulus.

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (re back, nūntiō bring word), report. RENOUNCE.

re-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (re again, parō prepare), renew, recruit.

repente, adv. (repēns sudden), suddenly.

reperiō, -perire, repperi, -pertum (re again, pariō produce), find, discover.

re-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum (re again, pōnō place), place again, restore. REPOSE.

rēs, rei, f., thing, affair.

re-scindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum (re away, scindō, cut) cut away, destroy. RESCIND.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondi, -spōnsum (re in return, spondēō promise), reply, answer. RESPOND.

respōnsum, -i, n. (respondeō, reply), answer. RESPONSE.

res-pūblica, rei-pūblīcae, f. (rēs affair, pūblica belonging to the people), REPUBLIC, commonwealth [see 110].

restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum (re again, statuō set up), restore. RESTITUTION.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuei, -tentum (re back, teneō hold), hold back, restrain, prevent. RETENTION.

reverentia, -ae, f. (revereor stand in awe of), REVERENCE.

re-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum and

re-vertor, -verti, -versus sum (re back, vertō turn), turn back, return. REVERT, REVERSION.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (re back, vocō call), call back. REVOKE.

rēx, rēgis, m., king. REGAL.

Rhea, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -i, m., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, -i, m., the Rhone.

ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream).

rixor, -āri, -ātus sum (rīxa quarrel), to quarrel.

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ask, demand, request.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman, **Rōmānus, -i, m.,** a Roman.

Rōmulus, -i, m., the founder and first king of Rome; **Rōmulus Silvius,** a king of Alba.

rūpēs, rūpis, f. (rumpō break), rock, cliff.

S.

Sabīni, -ōrum, m., the Sabines, an ancient Italian people adjoining the Latins.

sacer, sacra, sacrum, SACRED; **sacra, -ōrum, n. pl.,** sacred rites, sacrifices.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. (sacer sacred, dō give), priest; priestess.

saepe, saepius, saepissimō,
adv., *often*.

saepe numerō, adv., *oftentimes,*
frequently.

salūtō, -āre. -āvī, -ātum (salūs
greeting), *greet, SALUTE. SAL-*
UTATION.

sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood.
SANGUINE, SANGUINARY.

Santonēs, -um and Santonī,
-ōrum, m. pl., a people of
Aquitania.

sapientia, -ae, f. (sapiēns wise),
wisdom.

sarcina, -ae, f. (sarciō to patch),
bundle; pl., baggage carried
by soldiers. See impedī-
menta.

satis, adv., enough, sufficiently;
used adjectively in the sense
of sufficient.

satis-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, -fac-
-tum (satis enough, faciō do),
enough, SATISFY, give SATIS-
FACTION.

Sāturnia, -ae, f., a town built by
Saturn on the Capitoline Hill.

Sāturnus, -ī, m. (serō sow), Sat-
urn, the father of Jupiter;
honored as the god of agri-
culture.

scelus, sceleris, n., crime, guilt,
wickedness.

sciō, scīre, scīvī and sciī, sci-
-tum, know, understand. SCI-
ENCE.

scribō, scribere, scripsī, scrip-
-tum, write. SCRIBE, DE-
SCRIBE, SCRIPT, SCRIPTURE.

scūtum, -ī, n., a shield; [scū-
-tum was an oblong shield,
made of wood, and covered
with leather; clipeus, a round
brazen shield.]

sed, conj., but.

sēdēs, sēdis, f. (sedeō sit), seat;
dwelling-place; sēdēs rēgnī,
seat of government.

Sēgūsiānī, -ōrum, m. pl., a
people of Gaul, neighbors of
the Allobroges and Aedui.

semel, adv., once.

semper, adv., always, continually.

senātor, -ōris, m. (senex old),
SENATOR.

senātus -ūs, m. (senex old),
SENATE.

sēnī, -ae, -a (sex six), six each.

sententia, -ae, f. (sentiō think),
opinion. SENTENCE.

septem, num. adj. indecl.,
seven.

septemtriōnēs (septentrionēs),
-um, m. pl., the north; sub
septemtriōnibus, towards the
north.

septimus, -a, -um (septem seven),
seventh.

Sēquana, -ae, m., a river of
Gaul, the modern Seine.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people
of Gaul, dwelling on the Se-
quana.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, of the Se-
quani.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,
follow; accompany. SE-
QUENCE.

sermō, sermōnis, m., discourse, conversation. **SERMON.**
servitūs, ūtis, f. (servus slave), slavery, bondage.
Servius, -i, m., Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome.
servus, -i, m., slave, SERVANT.
sex, num. adj. indecl., SIX.
Sextus, -i, m., Sextus Pompeius, a son of Pompey the Great.
sī, conj., if; whether; see whether.
sic, adv., so, thus.
siccus, -a, -um, dry; siccum, -i, n., dry land.
sic-ut and sic-utī, adv., as; as if.
significō, -āre, āvi, -ātum (signum sign, faciō make), mean, SIGNIFY. SIGNIFICANT.
signum, -i, n., SIGN, mark; SIGNAL.
silva, -ae, f., woods, forest. **SILVAN.**
Silvia, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
Silvius, -i, m., name of several kings of Alba; Silvius Prociās, a king of Alba and father of Numitor and Amulius.
similis, simile, like, SIMILAR.
sīn, conj. (sī if, ne not), but if.
sine, prep. w. abl., without.
singulī, -ae, -a, SINGLE, one by one; each.
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left. SINISTER.
socer, socerī, m., father-in-law.
socius, -i, m., ally. **AS-SOCI-ATE.**

sōl, sōlis, m., sun. **SOLAR.**
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, he wont, be accustomed.
sōlitūdō, -inis, f. (sōlus alone), desert; solitary place; SOLITUDE.
sōlum, adv. (sōlus alone), only, alone.
solum, -i, n., ground, SOIL.
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only [see 24].
sonitus, -ūs, m. (sonō make a noise), sound, noise.
sonus, -i, m. (sonō make a noise), noise.
soror, sorōris, f., sister.
spatium, -i, n., SPACE; opportunity.
spectō, -āre, āvi, -ātum (speciō look), look at, behold, see; face, front, be situated.
spēs, speī, f., hope, expectation.
spīritus, -ūs, m. (spīrō breathe), breath; pride; lofty airs.
sponte, f. abl. [gen. spontis; no other cases found], of free will; suā sponte, of his own free will. **SPONTANEOUS.**
statim, adv., immediately.
statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum (status standing), set up: put; establish; decide. **STATUTE.**
sterilis, -e, unfruitful, STERILE.
stipendium, -i, n. (stips contribution, pendō pay), tax, tribute. **STIPEND.**
stipendiārius, -a, -um, adj., tributary, subject to tribute.

stō, stāre, stetī, statum, stand :
nōbis sanguine stat, *it costs*
us blood. STATE, STATION.

stolidus, -a, -um, foolish.

STOLID.

strēnuus, -a, -um, bold, brave.
STRENUOUS.

studeō, studēre, studi, no sup.,
be eager or zealous, desire.

studium, -ī, n. (studeō be eager),
zeal, desire. STUDY.

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suā-
sum, advise, PER-SUADE.

sub, prep. w. abl., under, beneath ;
in the time of ; sub mōnte, at
the foot of a mountain.

sub-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc-
tum (sub from under, dūcō
draw), draw from under ; with-
draw ; take away.

sub-eō, -īre, -īvi and -īi, -itum
(sub under, eō go), go under ;
endure.

subitō, adv. (subitus sudden),
suddenly, quickly.

sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (sub
from beneath, levō lift up), raise
up, support ; help, aid.

sub-rideō, -ridēre, -risī, -rīsum
(sub a little, rideō laugh), smile.

sub-siliō, -silire -silui, and -siliī,
no sup. (sub up, siliō leap),
leap up, jump.

sub-vehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vēc-
tum (sub from below, vehō
carry), bring up, transport.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-
sum (sub behind, cēdō come),
SUCCEED, follow. SUCCESSION.

Suēvi, -ōrum, m. pl., a power-
ful people of Germany.

sui, of himself, herself, itself,
themselves [see 112]. SUI-
CIDE. See caedō.

Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Cornelius
Sulla, a celebrated Roman.

sum, esse, fui, be [see 62].

summa, -ae, f. (summus highest),
amount, sum total. SUM.

summus, -a -um, highest [posi-
tive superus, comparative
superior, superlative suprē-
mus and summus].

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmp-
tum, take, AS-SUME. AS-
SUMPTION.

super, prep. w. acc. and abl.,
over, above, upon. SUPER-

superbiō, -īre, no perf. nor sup.
(superbus proud), be proud of.

superbus, -a, -um, proud ; Su-
perbus, -ī, m., the Proud, a
surname of the younger Tar-
quin, the last king of Rome.

superior, superius, upper, high-
er ; former. SUPERIOR. See
superus.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (super
over), surmount, surpass, over-
come, subdue.

super-sum, -esse, -fui (super
over, beyond ; sum be), be over ;
survive.

superus, -a, -um [comp. supe-
rior, superl. suprēmus or
summus] (super over, above),
above, on high, upper.

supplicium, -ī, n., punishment.

susciplō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-
tum (sub under, capiō take),
 undertake, take upon; engage
 in; receive; *sibi suscipere*,
 to take upon one's self.

suspiciō, -ōnis, f. (suspīcor sus-
 pect), SUSPICION.

suspīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum (sus-
 picō fr. sub secretly, specō look
 at), SUSPECT.

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -ten-
tum (sub up, teneō hold), hold
 up, SUSTAIN; endure; with-
 stand.

suus, -a, -um (suī), his, his own;
 her, her own; its, its own; their,
 their own.

T.

T., abbreviation of *Titus*, a Ro-
 man praenomen.

tabula, -ae, f., board; writing-
 table; muster-roll. TABLE.

talentum, -ī, n., a TALENT, a
 sum of money equal to about
 \$1200.

tam, adv., so, so very.

tamen, adv., nevertheless; yet,
 still.

tam-quam and tanquam, adv.
 (tam so, quam as), as much as;
 as if.

Tanaquil, -ilis, f., wife of Tar-
 quinius Priscus.

tandem, adv., at length; at last.

tantus, -a, -um, so great, such,
 so large.

tarditās, -ātis, f. (tardus slow),

slowness, TARDINESS; heaviness.

Tarpēia, -ae, f., Tarpeia [pro-
 nounced Tar-pē-ya], daughter
 of Spurius Tarpeius.

Tarpēius, -a, -um, Tarpeian [pro-
 nounced Tar-pē-yan]; **mōns**
Tarpēius, the Tarpeian Rock,
 the name of a rock on the
 Capitoline hill from which
 criminals were thrown head-
 long; the Tarpeian Mount.

Tarquiniī, -ōrum, m. pl., an
 ancient town of Etruria.

Tarquinius, -ī, m., Tarquin, the
 name of an illustrious Roman
 family, of which two, Priscus
 and Superbus, were kings.

tēctum, -ī, n. (tegō to cover),
 roof.

tōlum, -ī, n., weapon, missile.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (tem-
 pus a piece cut off), abstain.

TEMPER, TEMPERATE.

tempestās, -ātis, f. (tempus
 time), storm: TEMPEST.

templum, -ī, n., TEMPLE.

tempus, temporis, n., time.

TEMPORAL

teneō, tenēre. tenuī, tentum,
 hold; have, possess; keep; re-
 strain; *memoriā tenēre*, to
 remember.

tener, tenera, tenerum, TEN-
DER, delicate.

tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, try.

TENTATIVE.

terra, -ae, f., earth, land, ground.

TERRACE.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten,
TERRI-FY.

terrītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (terreō
frighten), terrify.

terrītōrium, -ī, n. (terra earth),
TERRITORY.

tertiō, adv. (tertius third), the
third time.

testis, testis, m. and f., witness.
TESTIFY.

Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly.

Ti., abbreviation of *Tiberius*, a
 Roman praenomen.

Tiberis, -is [acc. -im, abl. -ī], m.,
the Tiber, a river in Italy on
 which Rome is situated.

Tiberius, -ī, m. See Ti.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, no supine, to fear.

timidus, -a, -um (timeō to fear),
TIMID; cowardly.

timor, timōris, m., fear. TIM-
OROUS.

tintinnābulum, -ī, n. (tintinnō
to ring), bell.

Titus, -ī, m. See T.

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublā-
tum, lift, raise; pick up; re-
move, take away; destroy.

tonitrus, -ūs, m., and tonitrū,
n. indecl. (tonō to thunder),
thunder.

tonō, tonāre, tonuī, tonitum,
thunder.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire.

trādūcō and trānsdūcō, -dū-
cere, -dūxī, -ductum (trāns
across, dūcō lead), lead across;
lead; lead from one place to
another. TRADUCE.

trāns, prep. w. acc., across, over;
beyond. TRANS-

trāns-eō, -ire, -īf, -itum (trans
across, over; eō go), go across
or over; cross. TRANSIT,
TRANSITIVE, TRANSIENT,
TRANSITION.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
(trāns across, ferō bear), bear
across; TRANSFER. TRANS-
LATION.

trānsigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum
(trāns through to the end, agō
bring), bring to an end; spend.
TRANSACT, TRANSACTION.

trānsiliō or trānsaliō, -silire,
-silivī, -siliī, or -siluī, -sultum
(trāns over, saliō leap), leap
over.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
(trāns across, portō carry),
carry across, TRANSPORT-
TRANSPORTATION.

trēs, tria [see 108], three.

Trēvirī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people
of Northern Gaul.

tribūnus, -ī, m. (tribus tribe),
TRIBUNE; tribūnī militum,
military tribunes, of which offi-
cers each legion had six.

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribū-
tum, give, grant, bestow.

TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTE, CON-
TRIBUTION.

tricēsimus, -a, -um (trīgintī
thirty), thirtieth.

triduum, -ī, n. (trēs three, diēs
day), three days.

trigeminī, -ōrum, m. pl. (trēs

three, signor be born), three brothers born at a birth.

trigintā, num. adj. indecl., *thirty*.

tristis, **triste**, *sad, sorrowful*.

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*triumphus a triumph*), *to triumph*.

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy, a city in the . Northwestern part of Asia Minor*.

Trōiānus, -a, -um, *Trojan*.

tū, pers. pron., *thou, you* [see 112].

tuba, -ae, f. (*akin to tubus, a tube*), *trumpet*.

tubicen, -inis, m. (*tuba trumpet, canō to sound*), *trumpeter*.

Tulingī, -ōrum, m. pl., *a people of Southern Germany, neighbors of the Helvetii*.

Tullia, -ae, f., *daughter of Servius Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius Superbus*.

Tullius, -ī, m. See **Servius**.

Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus Hostilius, the third king of Rome*.

tum, adv., *then; also; cum — tum, both — and*.

tumulus, -ī, m. (*tumēō swell*), *mound*.

turris, **turris**, f., *tower*. **TURRET**.

tūtōr, -ōris, m. (*tueor protect*), *guardian*: **TUTOR**.

tūtus, -a, -um (*tueor protect*), *safe*.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron. (*tū thou, you*), *thy, thine; your, yours*.

tyrannicus, -a, -um, adj., *despotic, tyrannical*.

tyrannus, -ī, m., *monarch; tyrant*.

U.

ūber, **ūberis**, n., *udder; teat*.

ubi, adv., *when, where*.

ulciscor, **ulcisci**, **ultus sum**, *take revenge; avenge*.

ūllus, -a, -um, *any* [see 24].

ūterior, **ūterius** (*ūter that is beyond*), *farther* [see 85]. **ULTERIOR**.

ūltimus, -a, -um, *last, uttermost, farthest*.

ūtrā, prep. w. acc, *beyond*. **ULTRA-**.

ūnā, adv. (*ūnus one and the same*), *at the same time; in company, together*.

unde, adv., *from which place, whence*.

undique, adv. (**unde, -que**), *from all parts; on all sides*.

ūnus, -a, -um, *one, single; one and the same; pl., alone* [see 24].

urbs, **urbis**, f., *city*. **SUB-URBS**.

usque, adv., *even; till*.

ūsus, -ūs, m. (*ūtor use*), **USE**; *advantage*.

ut and **utī**, conj., *that, in order that; as*.

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, *which of two, which* [see 24].

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**; gen. **utriusque**, etc. [declined

like **uter**, see 24], *each, both.*

ūtilis, ūtile (*ūtor use*; suffix *-ilis* denoting *capability*), *useful, beneficial, profitable.*

ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, **USE**, *make use of; adopt.*

utrum, **adv.** (*uter which of two*), *whether.*

ūva, -ae, f., *a grape; a bunch of grapes.*

uxor, uxōris, f., *wife.*

V.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *be unoccupied.* **VACATE, VACANT, VACATION.**

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty.*

vadum, -ī, n. (*vadō go*), *ford, shallow.*

vāgītus, -ūs, m. (*vāgiō cry, squall*), *crying, squalling.*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum (*vagus roaming about*), *roam about, wander about.* **VAGA-BOND.**

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, **PRE-VAIL.**

validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, powerful.*

vāllum, -ī, n. (*vāllus the line of palisades, stakes, set about an intrenchment*), *rampart, intrenchment.*

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *M. Varro, a friend of Pompey the Great.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*vastus empty, desolate*), *lay waste, DEVASTATE.*

vēctigal, vēctigālīs, n. (*vehō carry*), *toll paid for carrying goods into a country; tax; revenue.*

vehementer, vehementius, vehementissimō, adv. (*vehemēns violent*), *violently, severely; furiously; VEHEMENTLY.*

vel, conj., or; vel — vel, either — or.

vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditum (*vēnum sale, dō give*), *sell.* **VEND.**

veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum, *come; arrive at.*

verber, -eris, n., *blow.* **RE-VERBER-ATE.**

verbum, -ī, n., *word.* **VERB, VERBAL.**

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear.*

vērō, adv. (*vērus true*), *in truth, truly; indeed; but.*

vescor, vescī, fill one's self with; live upon; eat.

Vesontīō, -ōnis, f., *the chief town of the Sequani.*

vesper, vesp̄eris and vesper, -ī, m., *evening star; evening; ad vesperum, till evening.* **VESPER, VESPERS.**

Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta, the goddess of the hearth, to whom a perpetual fire was kept burning.*

Vestālīs, -e, of or belonging to Vesta, Vestal.

vester, vestra, vestrum, poss. pron., your, yours.

vetus, gen. **veteris**, *old, long standing, ancient*. **VETERAN**, **IN-VETER-ATE**.

vēxillum, -ī, n. (**vēlum** *sail*), *stand-ard; flag*.

vēxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**vehō** *carry*), *trouble, annoy, harass*.

VEX, **VEXATION**, **VEXATIOUS**.

via, -ae, f., *way, road; path; march*.

vīcēsīmus, -a, -um (**vīginti** *twenty*), *twentieth*.

vīctor, -ōris, m., *conqueror*.

vīctōria, -ae, f., **VICTORY**.

vīcus, -ī, m., *village*.

videō, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **visum**, *see*.

videor, **vidēri**, **visus sum**, *pass. and deponent, be seen; seem; seem good or proper*.

vīgilia, -ae, f. (**vīgīlō** *to watch*), *watch; dē tertiā vīgiliā, in the third watch*. See **LN. LV.**, **NOTE 5**.

vīgintī, num. adj. indecl., *twenty*.

vincō, **vincere**, **vīcī**, **vīctum**, *conquer*.

vinculum, -ī, n. (**vinciō** *bind*), *a chain; in vincula conicere, to throw into prison*.

vīdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *claim*.

VINDICATE, **VINDICATION**.

vir, **vīrī**, m., *man; hero; husband*.

See **LN. XXV.**, **NOTE 1**.

virgō, -inis, f. (**virēō** *flourish, bloom*), **VIRGIN**.

virtūs, **virtūtis**, f. (**vir** *man, hero*), *valor, courage; VIRTUE*.

vis, **vis** [acc. **vim**, dat. and abl.

vī; pl. **vīrēs**, **vīrium**, **vīri-bus**, etc.], f., *strength, power*.

vīta, -ae, f. (**vīvō** *live*), *life*.

VITAL.

vītis, -is, f., *vine*.

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *shun, avoid*.

vix, adv., *with difficulty; scarcely, hardly*.

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *call, summon, invite*. **VOCATION**, **VOCATIVE**.

volnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**vol-nus** *wound*), *to wound*.

volnus, **volneris**, *a wound*.

VULNER-ABLE.

volō, **velle**, **volui**, *be WILLING; wish; desire* [see **125**].

volpēs, -is, f., *fox*.

voluntās, -ātis, f. (**volō** *to wish*), *wish, consent*. **VOLUNTARY**.

vōs, pers. pron. pl., *you* [see **112**].

vōx, **vōcis**, f., **VOICE**. **VOCAL**.

II. English-Latin.

The words given in this Vocabulary are more fully described in the preceding.
See that Vocabulary also for the Proper Names.

A.

able, be able, possum.
about, w. numerals, ad, circiter.
abundance, cōpia.
accuse, accūsō.
across, trāns.
adopt, ūtor.
advancing, veniēns.
advise, moneō.
affair, rēs.
after, prep. post; conj. postquam.
afterwards, postea.
against, in, contrā.
aid, auxilium; to aid, iuvō.
all, every, omnis; pl. omnēs;
all, the whole, tōtus.
ally, socius.
almost, paene, prope.
alone, sōlus.
also, etiam.
although, cum, etsi.
ambassador, lēgātus.
among, apud, inter, in.
and, et, atque, -que; both — and,
et — et.
animal, animal.
announce, nūntiō.
any, quis, ūllus.
anything, quid, aliquid (116, a).
appoint, creō.

arms, arma.
army, exercitus, āgmen.
around, circum.
arrival, adventus.
arrive, perveniō.
ascertain, cōgnōscō.
as soon as, postquam; as soon
as possible, quam primum.
ask, quaerō; ask for, rogō.
assemble, conveniō.
assembly, concilium.
assist, adsum.
at home, domi.
attack, impetus; to attack, op-
pugnō.
attempt, cōnor.
at Caesar's feet, Caesarī ad
pedēs.
auxiliaries, auxilia.
avoid, vitō.
away, take away, tollō.

B.

bad, malus.
baggage, impedimenta.
bank, ripa.
battle, proellum, pugna.
be, sum; be present, adsum; be
from or distant, absom.
beautiful, pulcher.
because, quod, quia.

become, **fiō**; become master of, **potior**.
 before, ante, **prō**; priusquam.
 beg for, **petō**.
 beginning, **initium**.
 besiege, **oppugnō**.
 best, **optimus**.
 betake myself, **mē cōnferō**, **mē recipiō**.
 better, **mellior**.
 between, **inter**.
 big, **māgnus**.
 bold, **audāx**.
 born, be born, **nāscor**.
 both, **uterque**; both — and, **et — et**.
 boy, **puer**.
 brave, **fortis**.
 bravely, **fortiter**.
 break up (camp), (castra) **moveō**.
 bridge, **pōns**.
 bring, **ferō**; bring upon, **inferō**.
 broad, **lātus**.
 brother, **frāter**.
 building, **aedificium**.
 burn, **incendō**, **cremō**; burn up, **exūrō**, **combūrō**.
 but if, **sīn**.
 buy, **emō**.
 by, **ā**, **ab**; by no means, **minimē**.

C.

call, summon, **vocō**; call, name, **appellō**; call together, **convo-
cō**; call to mind, **commemorō**.
 camp, **castra**; pitch a camp, **cas-
tra pōnō**; break up camp, **cas-
tra moveō**.

can, **possum**.
 capture, **expugnō**.
 carry, carry on, **gerō**; carry on war, **bellum gerō**; **bellō**.
 cart, **carrus**.
 cause, **causa**.
 cavalry, **equitātus**; of cavalry, **equester**.
 cavalryman, **eques**.
 censure, **accūsō**.
 character, **nātūra**.
 chief, **princeps**.
 choose, **creō**.
 citadel, **arx**.
 citizen, **cīvis**.
 city, **urbs**.
 cliff, **rūpēs**.
 cold, **frigus**.
 collect, **comportō**, **cōnferō**, **cōn-
dūcō**.
 come, **veniō**; come together, **con-
veniō**; come to, **pervenīō**.
 comitium, **comitium**.
 command, be in command of, **prae-
sum**.
 company, in company, **ūnā**.
 complain, **queror**.
 conceal, **occultō**.
 concerning, **dē**.
 confidence, **fidēs**.
 congratulate, **grātulor**.
 conquer, **vincō**.
 consent, **voluntās**.
 consider, **habēō**. **dūcō**
 conspiracy, **coniūratiō**.
 consul, **cōnsul**; in the consulship of Caesar, **Caesare cōnsule**.
 continually, **continenter**.
 corn, **frūmentum**.

could, past tense of *possum*.
council, *concilium*.
counsel, *cōnsilium*.
country, fatherland, *patria*.
cowardly, *ignāvus*.
cross, *trāseō*.

D.

danger, *periculum*.
dangerous, *periculōsus*.
daughter, *filia*.
dawn, at the earliest dawn, *primā lūce*.
day, *diēs* ; at daybreak, *primā lūce* ; on the day before, *pridīō*.
death, *mors*.
deceive, *dēcipiō*.
decide, *statuō*.
decision, *iūdicium*.
deep, *altus*.
defend, *dēfendō*.
delay, *moror*.
deliberate, *dēliberō*.
demand, *postulō*. *poscō*.
depart, *discēdō*.
departure, *profectiō*.
describe, *dēsignō*.
design, *cōnsilium*.
desire, *studium*, *cupiditās*.
desirous, *cupidus*.
destroy, *dēlēō*.
destruction, *perniciēs*.
determine, *iūdicō*.
devastate, *vāstō*.
die, *morior*.
differ, *diffērō*.
difficulty, *angustiae* ; with difficulty, *vix*.

dig, *fodiō*.
direction, *pars*.
distance, *spatium*.
distant, be distant ; *absum* ; most distant, *extrēmus*.
distinguished, *nōbilis*.
disturb, *commoveō*.
ditch, *fossa*.
divulge, *ēnūtiō*.
do, *faciō*.
draw, *dūcō*.
dwell, *incolō*.

E.

each, to each other, *inter sē*.
easily, *facile*.
easy, *facilis* ; very easy, *perfacilis*.
either — or, *aut* — *aut*.
elect, *creō*.
embassy, *legātiō*.
empire, *imperium*.
empty, *inflūō*.
encamp, *castra pōnō* ; *cōnsidō*.
encompass, *contineō*.
encourage, *cōnfirmō*.
end, *finis*.
endeavor, *nītor*.
endure, *subeō*.
enemy, *hostis*.
enervate, *effēminō*.
entire, *tōtus*.
entreat, *implōrō*, *ōrō*.
equal, *pār*, *aequus*.
establish, *cōnfirmō*.
even, not even, *nē* — *quidem*.
excel, *praecēdō*, *praestō*.
exhort, *hortor*.
expectation, *spēs*.

extraordinary, inocrēdibilis.
eye, oculus.

F.

far, by far, longē; very far, longissimē.
farther, adj., ūlterior; adv., longius.
father, pater.
father-in-law, socer.
fatherland, patria.
favor, faveō.
fear, timor; to fear, timeō, vereor.
few, pauci.
field, ager.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fifth, quīntus.
fight, pugnō.
find, reperiō.
fire, ignis; set on fire, incendō.
first, primus; in the first part of the night, primā nocte.
five, quinque.
flee, fugiō.
flight, fuga.
flow, fluō.
follow, sequor.
fond, cupidus.
foot, pēs; at the foot of the mountain, sub mōnte.
for, dē w. abl., ad w. acc.; for this reason, hōc, eō.
foraging, pābulātiō.
forest, silva.
forget, oblivīscor.
former, pristinus, vetus.
forth, lead forth, ēdūcō.

fortify, mūniō.
fortune, fōrtūna.
forward, send forward, prae-mittō; move forward, prō-moveō.
free, liber; of one's own free will, suā sponte.
friend, amicus.
friendly, amicus.
friendship, amicitia.
from, from near, ā, ab; from out of, ē, ex.
furiously, vehementer.
furnish, faciō.
furthermost, extrēmus.
future, in the future, in reliquum tempus.

G.

garrison, praesidium.
general, imperātor.
generosity, liberalitās.
get possession of, potior.
get rid of, dēpōnō.
girl, puella.
give, dō; give orders, imperō; give satisfaction, satisfaciō.
glory, glōria.
go, eō; go forth, exeō.
god, deus.
goddess, dea.
gone, perf. part. of exigō.
good, bonus.
government, imperium.
grandfather, avus.
grant, concēdō.
great, māgnus; so great, tantus.
grievous, gravis.
guard, custōs.

H.

happen, accidō, fiō.
happy, fēlix.
harass, vēxō.
hasten, mātūrō, contendō, ac-
currō.
have, habeo.
he says, dicit.
hear, audiō.
height, altitūdō.
help, iuvō.
hem in, contineō.
high, altus
highest, summus.
hill, collis.
hindrance, impedimentum.
his, his own, suus.
hither, citerior.
hold, habeo, obtineō, teneō;
hold a conference, conloquor.
home, at home, domi; homeward,
domum; from home, domō.
hope, spēs.
horse, equus.
hostage, obses.
hour, hōra.
house, domus.
hurl, coniciō.
husband, vir.

I.

I, ego.
if, si.
implore, implorō.
import, importō.
in, into, in.
incite, facio.

influence, auctoritās.
influenced, adductus.
inform Caesar, Caesarem cer-
tiōrem facio.
infuse, iniciō.
inquire, quaerō.
insult, contumēlia.
intervene, intersum.
invile, arcessō.

J.

just, iustus.

K.

keep, teneō; keep from, pro-
hibeo.
kill, caedō, interficiō.
kindness, beneficium.
king, rēx.
know, sciō; know, find out, cō-
gnōscō; not know, nēsciō.

L.

land, terra.
language, lingua.
large, magnus.
late in the day, multō diē.
law, lēx, iūs.
lay waste, vāstō.
lead, dūcō; lead forth, ēdūcō.
leader, dux.
leave, relinquo.
left, sinister.
legate, lēgātus.
legion, legiō.
letter, epistola.

levy on, **impōnō**.
 lieutenant, **lōgātus**.
 like, **similis**.
 line of battle, **aciēs**.
 little, paulus; a little, **paulō**.
 lofty airs, **spiritus**.
 long, for a long time, **diū**; longer,
diūtius.
 look at, **intueor**; look out for,
prōspiciō.
 love, **amor**; to love, **amō**.

M.

make, **faciō**; make or deliver a
 speech, **ōrātiōnem habeo**;
 make haste, **mātūrō**; make
 upon, **inferō**.
 man, **vir**, **homō**.
 manner, in such a manner, **ita**.
 many, **multi**.
 march, **iter**; to march, **iter**
facere.
 marriage, **mātrimōnium**; to give
 in marriage, in **mātrimōnium**
dare.
 master, become master of, **potior**.
 means, by no means, **minimē**; by
 means of, see 54.
 memory, **memoria**.
 mile, **mille passuum**.
 mind, **animus**, **mēns**.
 misfortune, **incommodum**.
 missile, **tōlum**.
 month, **mēnsis**.
 more, **magis**, **amplius**; be more
 willing, **malō**.
 mother, **māter**.
 mountain, **mōns**.

move, **moveō**; move forward,
prōmoveō.
 much, **multus**.
 multitude, **multitūdō**.
 murder, **caedēs**; to murder, **cae**
dō, **occidō**.
 my, my own, **meus**.

N.

narrow pass, **angustiae**.
 nature, **nātūra**.
 near, **circum**, **ad**.
 nearest, **proximus**.
 nearly, **fere**.
 neighbors, **finitimi**.
 neither — nor, **neque — neque**.
 nine, **novem**.
 no, none, **nūllus**.
 nobility, **nōbilitās**.
 noble, **nōbilis**.
 none the less, **nihilō minus**.
 not, **nōn**; not — even, **nē —**
quidem.
 nothing, **nihil**.
 notice, **animadvertō**.
 number, **numerus**.

O.

obtain, **obtineō**, **cōnsequor**.
 occupy, **occupō**.
 often, **saepe**.
 old, **vetus**, **nātus**.
 on, upon, **in**.
 on account of, **propter**.
 on all sides, **undique**.
 on the day before, **pridē**.
 one, **ūnus**.

one by one, singulī.
one party — the other, alterī — alterī.
opinion, sententia.
opportunity, potestās, facultās.
or, aut, vel, an.
order, give orders, imperō.
other, alius; to each other, from each other, inter sē.
ought, oportet, debet. See also LN. LXX.
our, our own, noster.
out, set out, proficiscor; out of, ē, ex.
overcome, superō.
own, his own, suus; my own, meus; your own, tuus, vester; their own, suus.

P.

pace, passus.
part, pars.
party, one party — the other, alterī — alterī.
pass the winter, hiemō.
peace, pāx.
people, populus.
peril, periculum.
persist, perseverō.
persuade, persuadēō.
pitch a camp, castra pōnō.
place, locus; place, put, pōnō.
plan, cōsillium.
please, placeō.
pledge, fidēs.
poor, pauper.
possession, possessiō; get possession of, potior.

power, royal power, sovereign power, rēgnum.
practicable, facilis.
practice, exercitātiō.
praetor, praetor.
prepare, comparō.
present, be present, adsum.
press, press upon, premō.
prevail upon, permovēō.
prevent, retinēō.
price, pretium.
private, privātus.
proceed, prōcēdō.
promise, polliceor.
protection, praesidium.
province, prōvincia.
provisions, commeātus.
pursue, persequor.
put off, cōnferō.

R.

ready, parātus.
rear of an army, āgmen novissimum.
reason, causa.
recall to mind, reminiscor.
recent, recēns.
refinement, hūmānitās.
reign, rēgnō.
rejoice, laetor.
relief, subsidium.
remain, manet.
remaining, reliquus.
remember, meminī; memoriā teneō.
remembrance, memoria.
remove, movēō, rēmōvō.

reply, respōnsum; to reply, re-
spondeō.
report, ēnūntiō.
resolve, cōstituō.
rest, the rest, cēterī; rest of,
reliquus.
restrain, retineō, prohibeō.
return, revertor, revertō.
revenue, vēctigal.
reward, praemium.
rich, dives.
ridge, iugum.
right, dexter.
ripe, mātūrus.
river, flūmen.
road, via.
rout, pellō.
route, iter.
royal power, rēgnum.
ruin, perniciēs.

S.

sad, tristis.
sake, for the sake of, causā.
same, the same, idem.
satisfaction, give satisfaction, sa-
tisfaciō.
satisfy, satisfaciō.
say, dicō; he says, dicit.
sea, mare.
see, videō.
seem, videor; it seems good, vidē-
tur.
seize, occupō.
select, dēligō.
sell, vēndō.
senator, senātor.
send, mittō; send forward, prae-
mittō.

separate, dividō.
set on fire, incendō.
set out, proficiscor.
severely, graviter, vehementer
ship, navis.
short, brevis; shortest way or
route, proximum iter.
show, probō.
shun, vitō.
side, this side of, citrā.
sides, on all sides, undique.
sight, cōspectus.
signal, signum.
since, cum.
single, ūnus.
sister, soror.
skilful, perītus.
slave, servus.
slavery, servitūs.
small, parvus.
so, ita; with adjectives, tam; so
great, tantus.
soldier, miles.
some, some one, aliquis. See
116, a.
son, filius; son-in-law, gener.
soon, mātūrē.
sovereignty, sovereign power, rē-
gnum.
Spain, Hispania.
speak, loquor.
speech, ōrātiō; make, deliver a
speech, ōrātiōnem habeō.
stand, stō.
state, civitās.
station, conlocō, cōstituō.
stay, maneō.
storm, expugnō.
strengthen, cōfirmō.

strive, *nītor*.
such, *tantus*.
sufficient, *sufficiently*, *satis*; *with*
sufficient ease, *satis com-*
modē.
suitable, *idōneus*, *commodus*.
summer, *aestās*.
summon, *vocō*, *convocō*.
sunset, *occāsus solis*.
supply, *cōpia*; *supplies*, *rēs frū-*
mentāria, *commeātus*.
surround, *cingō*.
survive, *supersum*.
suspicion, *suspiciō*.
swiftly, *celeriter*.

T.

take, *capture*, *capiō*, *expūgnō*;
take away, *tollō*; *take to one's*
self, *sūmō*.
tarry, *moror*.
teach, *doceō*.
ten, *decem*.
tend, *pertineō*.
territory, *ager*, *finēs*.
than, *quam*.
that, *ille*.
that, *in order that*, *ut*; *after verbs*
of fearing, *nē*.
that not, *nē*; *after verbs of fear-*
ing, *ut*.
the same, *idem*.
there, *in that place*, *ibi*.
their, *their own*, *suus*.
they, *them*, *see LN. LVIII.*
 NOTE 2.
thing, *rēs*.
think, *putō*, *arbitror*.

third, *tertius*.
this, *hic*.
those, *illi*.
three days, *trīdūm*.
three hundred, *trecentī*.
through, *per*.
throw one's self, *sē prōicere*.
till evening, *ad vesperum*.
time, *tempus*; *for a long time*,
diū.
to, *ad*.
to-day, *hōdiē*.
together, *come together*, *conveniō*.
tongue, *lingua*.
top of the mountain, *summus*
mōns.
towards, *ad*; *towards the north*,
sub septemtrionibus.
tower, *turris*.
town, *oppidum*.
trader, *mercātor*.
train up, *instituō*.
tribute, *stipendium*.
troops, *cōpiae*.
try, *cōnor*.
twenty, *vigintī*.
two days, *bīdūm*.

U.

under, *sub*.
unoccupied, *be unoccupied*, *vacō*.
until, *dum*.
unwilling, *be unwilling*, *nōlō*.
upon, *in*.
upper, *superior*.
urge, *hortor*.
use, *ūtor*; *make use of*, *ūtor*.
useful, *ūtilis*.

V.

valor, virtūs.

very, valdē; very easy, perfaci-
lis; very great, m̄ximus; very
is often rendered by ipse: e. g.
the very city, urbs ipsa.

vicinity, in or into the vicinity of,
ad w. name of town in acc.
victory, victōria.

W.

wage, gerō.

wages, mercēs.

wagon, carrus.

wait, expectō.

walled town, oppidum.

wanting, be wanting, dēsum.

war, bellum.

waste, lay waste, vāstō.

watch, vigilia; in the third watch,
dē tertiā vigiliā.

way, via.

we, nōs. See LN. LVII.

wealthy, cōpiōsus.

weapon, tēlum.

weep, fleō; weeping, flēns.

what? quid?

what sort of a? qui? See LN.

LX.

when, cum.

where, ubi.

whether, utrum.

which, quod.

while, dum.

who, qui; who? quis?

whole, tōtus.

why? quid?

wide, lātus.

willing, be willing, volō.

win, conciliō.

wing of an army, cornū.

winter, pass the winter, hiemō.

winter-quarters, hiberna.

wish, volō.

with, cum.

withdraw, sē recipere.

without, sine.

withstand, sustineō.

witness, testis.

woman, mulier.

word, verbum.

worthy, dignus.

wound, volnus; to wound, vol-
nerō.

write, scribō.

wrong, iniūria.

Y.

year, annus.

yet, tamen.

yoke, iugum.

you, tū, vōs. See LN. LVII.

your, tuus, vester.

youth, adolēscēns.

